CONTENTS

Preface 1
Before you Read this Book 1
Typographic Conventions 2
Additional Resources 2
  Documentation 2
  Knowledge Base 2
  Cisco Support Community 3
  Customer Support 3
  Registering for a Cisco Account 3
  Cisco Welcomes Your Comments 3

CHAPTER 1
AsyncOS CLI Quick Reference Guide 1-1
  CLI Commands (No Commit Required) 1-2
  CLI Commands (Commit Required) 1-5

CHAPTER 2
Command Line Interface: The Basics 2-1
  Accessing the Command Line Interface (CLI) 2-1
  Command Line Interface Conventions 2-2
  General Purpose CLI Commands 2-5
  Batch Commands 2-6
    Batch Command Example 2-6

CHAPTER 3
The Commands: Reference Examples 3-1
  How to Read the Listing 3-2
  Advanced Malware Protection 3-2
    ampconfig 3-2
  Anti-Spam 3-3
    antispamconfig 3-4
    antispamstatus 3-5
    antispamupdate 3-6
    incomingrelayconfig 3-7
    siblconfig 3-12
Contents

Anti-Virus 3-14
  antivirusconfig 3-14
  antivirusstatus 3-17
  antivirusupdate 3-18

Command Line Management 3-19
  commit 3-19
  commitdetail 3-20
  clearchanges or clear 3-21
  help or h or ? 3-21
  rollbackconfig 3-22
  quit or q or exit 3-23

Configuration File Management 3-23
  loadconfig 3-23
  mailconfig 3-26
  resetconfig 3-26
  saveconfig 3-28
  showconfig 3-29

Cluster Management 3-30
  clusterconfig 3-30
  clustercheck 3-32

Data Loss Prevention 3-33
  dlprollback 3-33
  dlpstatus 3-34
  dlpupdate 3-34
  emconfig 3-35

Domain Keys 3-38
  domainkeysconfig 3-38

DMARC Verification 3-57
  dmarcconfig 3-57

DNS 3-62
  dig 3-62
  dnsconfig 3-64
  dnsflush 3-71
  dnslistconfig 3-72
  dnslistflush 3-74
  dnslisttest 3-74
  dnsstatus 3-75

General Management/Administration/Troubleshooting 3-76
  addressconfig 3-77
Mail Delivery Configuration/Monitoring 3-155
  addresslistconfig 3-155
  aliasconfig 3-157
  archivemessage 3-162
  altschost 3-163
  bounceconfig 3-166
  bouncerecipients 3-174
  bvconfig 3-176
  deleterecipients 3-179
  deliveryconfig 3-182
  delivernow 3-184
  destconfig 3-184
  Example: Global Settings 3-197
  hostrate 3-198
  hoststatus 3-199
  oldmessage 3-202
  rate 3-203
  redirectrecipients 3-204
  resetcounters 3-206
  removemessage 3-206
  showmessage 3-207
  showrecipients 3-208
  status 3-210
  tophosts 3-212
  topin 3-213
  unsubscribe 3-216
  workqueue 3-218

Networking Configuration / Network Tools 3-220
  etherconfig 3-220
  interfaceconfig 3-229
  nslookup 3-236
  netstat 3-237
  ping 3-238
  routeconfig 3-241
  setgateway 3-245
  sethostname 3-246
  smtproutes 3-247
  sslconfig 3-250
  telnet 3-253
  traceroute 3-254
Outbreak Filters 3-256
  outbreakconfig 3-256
  outbreakflush 3-257
  outbreakstatus 3-259
  outbreakupdate 3-260
Policy Enforcement 3-261
  dictionaryconfig 3-261
  exceptionconfig 3-270
  filters 3-272
  policyconfig 3-275
  quarantineconfig 3-320
  scanconfig 3-323
  stripheaders 3-327
  textconfig 3-328
Logging and Alerts 3-335
  alertconfig 3-335
  grep 3-340
  logconfig 3-342
  rollovernow 3-355
  snmpconfig 3-357
  tail 3-360
Reporting 3-362
  reportingconfig 3-363
Senderbase 3-370
  sbstatus 3-370
  senderbaseconfig 3-371
SMTP Services Configuration 3-372
  listenerconfig 3-372
  Example - Configuring SPF and SIDF 3-397
  Example - Enable DMARC Verification 3-402
  localeconfig 3-406
  smtpauthconfig 3-408
System Setup 3-410
  systemsetup 3-410
URL Filtering 3-420
  urllistconfig 3-420
  webcacheflush 3-421
  websecurityadvancedconfig 3-421
  websecurityconfig 3-423
websecuritydiagnostics 3-424

User Management 3-424
userconfig 3-424
password or passwd 3-429
last 3-430
who 3-431
whoami 3-432

Virtual Appliance Management 3-432
loadlicense 3-433
showlicense 3-434
Preface

The instructions in this book are designed for an experienced system administrator with knowledge of networking and email administration.

Before you Read this Book

Note

If you have already cabled your appliance to your network, ensure that the default IP address for the appliance does not conflict with other IP addresses on your network. The IP address assigned to the Management port by the factory is 192.168.42.42. See Chapter 3, “Setup and Installation” in the user guide for your release for more information about assigning IP addresses to the appliance.
## Typographic Conventions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Typeface or Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AaBbCc123</td>
<td>The names of commands, files, and directories; on-screen computer output.</td>
<td>Please choose an IP interface for this Listener. The <code>sethostname</code> command sets the name of the appliance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AaBbCc123</td>
<td>What you type, when contrasted with on-screen computer output.</td>
<td><code>mail3.example.com&gt;</code> <code>commit</code> Please enter some comments describing your changes: <code>[]&gt;</code> <code>Changed the system hostname</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AaBbCc123</td>
<td>Book titles, new words or terms, words to be emphasized. Command line variable; replace with a real name or value.</td>
<td>Read the <em>QuickStart Guide</em>. The appliance <em>must</em> be able to uniquely select an interface to send an outgoing packet. Before you begin, please reset your password to a new value. Old password: <code>ironport</code> New password: <code>your_new_password</code> Retype new password: <code>your_new_password</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Additional Resources

### Documentation

Documentation for your Email Security appliance is available from:


### Knowledge Base

To access the Knowledge Base for information about Cisco Content Security products, visit:

http://www.cisco.com/web/ironport/knowledgebase.html

**Note**

You need a Cisco.com User ID to access the site. If you do not have a Cisco.com User ID, see Registering for a Cisco Account, page 3.
Cisco Support Community

Cisco Support Community is an online forum for Cisco customers, partners, and employees. It provides a place to discuss general content security issues, as well as technical information about specific Cisco products. You can post topics to the forum to ask questions and share information with other users.

Access the Cisco Support Community for Email Security appliances at:

https://supportforums.cisco.com/community/netpro/security/email

Customer Support

Use the following methods to obtain support:

U.S.: Call 1 (408) 526-7209 or Toll-free 1 (800) 553-2447
If you purchased support through a reseller or another supplier, please contact that supplier directly with your product support issues.

Registering for a Cisco Account

Access to many resources on Cisco.com requires a Cisco account.
If you do not have a Cisco.com User ID, you can register for one here:

Cisco Welcomes Your Comments

The Technical Publications team is interested in improving the product documentation. Your comments and suggestions are always welcome. You can send comments to the following email address:
contentsecuritydocs@cisco.com
Please include the title of this book and the publication date from the title page in the subject line of your message.
AsyncOS CLI Quick Reference Guide

Use the tables to locate the appropriate CLI command, a brief description and its availability on the C-, X, and M-series platforms.

- CLI Commands (No Commit Required), page 1-2
- CLI Commands (Commit Required), page 1-5
# CLI Commands (No Commit Required)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLI Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Platform Availability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>antispamstatus</td>
<td>Display Anti-Spam status</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antispamupdate</td>
<td>Manually update spam definitions</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antivirusstatus</td>
<td>Display anti-virus status</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antivirusupdate</td>
<td>Manually update virus definitions</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>archivemessage</td>
<td>Archives older messages in your queue.</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bouncerecipients</td>
<td>Bounce messages from the queue</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clearchanges or clear</td>
<td>Clear changes</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commit</td>
<td>Commit changes</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commitdetail</td>
<td>Display detailed information about the last commit</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deleterecipients</td>
<td>Delete messages from the queue</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delivernow</td>
<td>Reschedule messages for immediate delivery</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diagnostic</td>
<td>Check RAID disks, network caches, and SMTP connections. Clear network caches.</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>Look up a record on a DNS server</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dlprollback</td>
<td>Rollback RSA DLP Engine</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dlpstatus</td>
<td>Version information for RSA DLP Engine</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dlpupdate</td>
<td>Update RSA DLP Engine</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dnsflush</td>
<td>Clear all entries from the DNS cache</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dnslistflush</td>
<td>Flush the current DNS List cache</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dnslisttest</td>
<td>Test a DNS lookup for a DNS-based list service</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dnsstatus</td>
<td>Display DNS statistics</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ecstatus</td>
<td>Check the version of the enrollment client that is used to obtain certificates</td>
<td>C-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ecupdate</td>
<td>Update the enrollment client that is used to obtain certificates</td>
<td>C-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encryptionstatus</td>
<td>Shows the version of the PXE Engine and Domain Mappings file</td>
<td>C- and X-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encryptionupdate</td>
<td>Requests an update to the PXE Engine</td>
<td>C- and X-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>featurekey</td>
<td>Administer system feature keys</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grep</td>
<td>Search for text in a log file</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help or h or ?</td>
<td>Help</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostrate</td>
<td>Monitor activity for a particular host</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoststatus</td>
<td>Get the status of the given hostname</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last</td>
<td>Display who has recently logged into the system</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldapflush</td>
<td>Flush any cached LDAP results</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldapupdate</td>
<td>Perform a single LDAP query test</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loadlicense</td>
<td>Load a virtual appliance license</td>
<td>All virtual appliances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mailconfig</td>
<td>Mail the current configuration to an email address</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nslookup</td>
<td>Query a name server</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netstat</td>
<td>Display network connections, routing tables, and network interface statistics.</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outbreakflush</td>
<td>Clear the cached Outbreak Rules</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outbreakstatus</td>
<td>Display current Outbreak Rules</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outbreakupdate</td>
<td>Update Outbreak Filters rules</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oldmessage</td>
<td>Displays a list of old messages in the queue.</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>packetcapture</td>
<td>Intercept and display packets being transmitted or received over the network</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ping</td>
<td>Ping a network host</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit or q or exit</td>
<td>Quit</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rate</td>
<td>Monitor message throughput</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reboot</td>
<td>Restart the system</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>removemessage</td>
<td>Removes old, undelivered messages from your queue.</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redirectrecipients</td>
<td>Redirect all messages to another relay host</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repengstatus</td>
<td>Request version information of Reputation Engine</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resetconfig</td>
<td>Restore the factory configuration defaults</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resetcounters</td>
<td>Reset all of the counters in the system</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resume</td>
<td>Resume receiving and deliveries</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resumeldel</td>
<td>Resume deliveries</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resumelistener</td>
<td>Resume receiving</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rollovernow</td>
<td>Roll over a log file</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saveconfig</td>
<td>Saves the configuration to disk</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sbstatus</td>
<td>Display status of SenderBase queries</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settime</td>
<td>Manually set the system clock</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>showmessage</td>
<td>Displays old undelivered messages in your queue.</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>showconfig</td>
<td>Display all configuration values</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>showlicense</td>
<td>Display virtual appliance license information</td>
<td>All virtual appliances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>showrecipients</td>
<td>Show messages from the queue by recipient host, Envelope From address, or all messages</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown</td>
<td>Shut down the system to power off</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slblconfig</td>
<td>Configure Safelist/Blocklist settings</td>
<td>C- and X-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td>System status</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supportrequest</td>
<td>Send a message to Cisco TAC</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspend</td>
<td>Suspend receiving and deliveries</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspenddel</td>
<td>Suspend deliveries</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspendlistener</td>
<td>Suspend receiving</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemsetup</td>
<td>First time system setup</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tail</td>
<td>Continuously display the end of a log file</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>techsupport</code></td>
<td>Allow Cisco TAC to access your system</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>telnet</code></td>
<td>Connect to a remote host</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tlsverify</code></td>
<td>Establish an outbound TLS connection to a remote host and debug any TLS connection issues</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tophosts</code></td>
<td>Display the top hosts by queue size</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>topin</code></td>
<td>Display the top hosts by number of incoming connections</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>trace</code></td>
<td>Trace the flow of a message through the system</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>traceroute</code></td>
<td>Display the network route to a remote host</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tzupdate</code></td>
<td>Update timezone rules</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>updatenow</code></td>
<td>Update all components</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>upgrade</code></td>
<td>Install an upgrade</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>version</code></td>
<td>View system version information</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>webcacheflush</code></td>
<td>Flush the cache used by the URL filtering feature</td>
<td>C-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>websecuritydiagnostics</code></td>
<td>View diagnostic statistics for URL filtering</td>
<td>C-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>who</code></td>
<td>List who is logged in</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>whoami</code></td>
<td>Display your current user id</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>workqueue</code></td>
<td>Display and/or alter work queue pause status</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CLI Commands (Commit Required)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLI Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Platform Availability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>addressconfig</td>
<td>Configure From: addresses for system generated mail</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addresslistconfig</td>
<td>Configure address lists</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adminaccessconfig</td>
<td>Configure network access list and banner login</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alertconfig</td>
<td>Configure email alerts</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliasconfig</td>
<td>Configure email aliases</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altsrchost</td>
<td>Configure Virtual Gateway™ mappings</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ampconfig</td>
<td>Configure Advanced Malware Protection (File reputation and analysis)</td>
<td>C-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antispamconfig</td>
<td>Configure Anti-Spam policy</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antivirusconfig</td>
<td>Configure anti-virus policy</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bounceconfig</td>
<td>Configure the behavior of bounces</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bvconfig</td>
<td>Configure key settings for outgoing mail, and configure how to handle invalid bounces.</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certconfig</td>
<td>Configure security certificates and keys</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clusterconfig</td>
<td>Configure cluster related settings</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deliveryconfig</td>
<td>Configure mail delivery</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destconfig</td>
<td>Configure options for the Destination Controls Table.</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictionaryconfig</td>
<td>Configure content dictionaries</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dmarcconfig</td>
<td>Configure DMARC settings</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dnsconfig</td>
<td>Configure DNS setup</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dnslistconfig</td>
<td>Configure DNS List services support</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domainkeysconfig</td>
<td>Configure DomainKeys support</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ecconfig</td>
<td>Configure the enrollment client that is used to obtain certificates</td>
<td>C-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emconfig</td>
<td>Configure the RSA Enterprise Manager interoperability settings</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encryptionconfig</td>
<td>Configure email encryption</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etherconfig</td>
<td>Configure Ethernet settings</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exceptionconfig</td>
<td>Configure domain exception table</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>featurekeyconfig</td>
<td>Automatically check and update feature keys</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filters</td>
<td>Configure message processing options</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incomingrelayconfig</td>
<td>Configure Incoming Relays</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interfaceconfig</td>
<td>Configure Ethernet IP addresses</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listenerconfig</td>
<td>Configure mail listeners</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldapconfig</td>
<td>Configure LDAP servers</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loadconfig</td>
<td>Load a configuration file</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localeconfig</td>
<td>Configure multi-lingual settings</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logconfig</td>
<td>Configure access to log files</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLI Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntpconfig</td>
<td>Configure NTP time server</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outbreakconfig</td>
<td>Configure Outbreak Filters</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password or passwd</td>
<td>Change your password</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policyconfig</td>
<td>Configure per recipient or sender based policies</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quarantineconfig</td>
<td>Configure system quarantines</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remotepower</td>
<td>Set up the appliance to allow remote power reset of the appliance chassis for specified hardware only.</td>
<td>C, M, and S-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reportingconfig</td>
<td>Configure reporting settings</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rollbackconfig</td>
<td>Rollback to one of the previously committed configurations</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routeconfig</td>
<td>Configure IP routing table</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scanconfig</td>
<td>Configure attachment scanning policy</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senderbaseconfig</td>
<td>Configure SenderBase connection settings</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setgateway</td>
<td>Set the default gateway (router)</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sethostname</td>
<td>Set the name of the machine</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settz</td>
<td>Set the local time zone</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sievechar</td>
<td>Configure characters for Sieve Email Filtering, as described in RFC 3598</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smtpauthconfig</td>
<td>Configure SMTP Auto profiles</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smtproutes</td>
<td>Set up permanent domain redirections</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snmpconfig</td>
<td>Configure SNMP</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sshconfig</td>
<td>Configure SSH keys</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sslconfig</td>
<td>Configure SSL settings</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stripheaders</td>
<td>Set message headers to remove</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>textconfig</td>
<td>Configure text resources</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsubscribe</td>
<td>Update the global unsubscribe list</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>updateconfig</td>
<td>Configure system update parameters</td>
<td>C- and X- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urllistconfig</td>
<td>Configure whitelists of safe URLs.</td>
<td>C-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userconfig</td>
<td>Manage user accounts and connections to external authentication sources.</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>websecurityadvancedconfig</td>
<td>Configure advanced settings for URL filtering</td>
<td>C-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>websecurityconfig</td>
<td>Configure global settings for URL filtering</td>
<td>C-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last</td>
<td>Add, edit, and remove users</td>
<td>C-, X-, and M- Series</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Command Line Interface: The Basics

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Accessing the Command Line Interface (CLI), page 2-1
- Batch Commands, page 2-6

Accessing the Command Line Interface (CLI)

The Command Line Interface is accessible via SSH or Telnet on IP interfaces that have been configured with these services enabled, or via terminal emulation software on the serial port. By factory default, SSH and Telnet are configured on the Management port. Use the `interfaceconfig` command to disable these services.

Access to the CLI varies depending on the management connection method chosen while setting up the appliance. The factory default username and password are listed next. Initially, only the admin user account has access to the CLI. You can add other users with differing levels of permission after you have accessed the command line interface for the first time via the admin account. The system setup wizard asks you to change the password for the admin account. The password for the admin account can also be reset directly at any time using the `password` command.

To connect via Ethernet: Start an SSH or Telnet session with the factory default IP address 192.168.42.42. SSH is configured to use port 22. Telnet is configured to use port 23. Enter the username and password below.

To connect via a Serial connection: Start a terminal session with the communication port on your personal computer that the serial cable is connected to. See the “Setup and Installation” chapter for more information. Enter the username and password below.

Log in to the appliance by entering the username and password below.

**Factory Default Username and Password**

- Username: `admin`
- Password: `ironport`

For example:

```bash
login: admin
password: ironport
```
Command Line Interface Conventions

This section describes the rules and conventions of the AsyncOS CLI.

Command Prompt

The top-level command prompt consists of the fully qualified hostname, followed by the greater than (>) symbol, followed by a space. For example:

mail3.example.com>

If the appliance has been configured as part of a cluster with the Centralized Management feature, the prompt in the CLI changes to indicate the current mode. For example:

(Cluster Americas) >

or

(Machine los_angeles.example.com) >

See “Centralized Management” in the user guide for more information.

When running commands, the CLI requires input from you. When the CLI is expecting input from you, the command prompt shows the default input enclosed in square brackets ([]) followed by the greater than (>) symbol. When there is no default input, the command prompt brackets are empty.

For example:

Please create a fully-qualified hostname for this Gateway
(Ex: "mail3.example.com"):
[>] mail3.example.com

When there is a default setting, the setting is displayed within the command prompt brackets. For example:

Ethernet interface:
1. Data 1
2. Data 2
3. Management
[1]> 1

When a default setting is shown, typing Return is equivalent to typing the default:

Ethernet interface:
1. Data 1
2. Data 2
3. Management
[1]> (type Return)
Command Syntax

When operating in the interactive mode, the CLI command syntax consists of single commands with no white spaces and no arguments or parameters. For example:

```
mail3.example.com> systemsetup
```

Select Lists

When you are presented with multiple choices for input, some commands use numbered lists. Enter the number of the selection at the prompt.

For example:

```
Log level: 
1. Error 
2. Warning 
3. Information
4. Debug
5. Trace
[3]> 3
```

Yes/No Queries

When given a yes or no option, the question is posed with a default in brackets. You may answer Y, N, Yes, or No. Case is not significant.

For example:

```
Do you want to enable FTP on this interface? [Y]> n
```

Subcommands

Some commands give you the opportunity to use subcommands. Subcommands include directives such as NEW, EDIT, and DELETE. For the EDIT and DELETE functions, these commands provide a list of the records previously configured in the system.

For example:

```
mail3.example.com> interfaceconfig
```

```
Currently configured interfaces: 
1. Management (192.168.42.42/24: mail3.example.com) 

Choose the operation you want to perform: 
- NEW - Create a new interface.
- EDIT - Modify an interface.
- GROUPS - Define interface groups.
- DELETE - Remove an interface.
[>]
```

Within subcommands, typing Enter or Return at an empty prompt returns you to the main command.
Chapter 2      Command Line Interface: The Basics

**Escape**

You can use the Control-C keyboard shortcut at any time within a subcommand to immediately exit return to the top level of the CLI.

**History**

The CLI keeps a history of all commands you type during a session. Use the Up and Down arrow keys on your keyboard, or the Control-P and Control-N key combinations, to scroll through a running list of the recently-used commands.

```plaintext
mail3.example.com> (type the Up arrow key)

mail3.example.com> interfaceconfig (type the Up arrow key)

mail3.example.com> topin (type the Down arrow key)
```

**Command Completion**

The command-line interface supports command completion. You can type the first few letters of some commands followed by the Tab key, and the CLI completes the string for unique commands. If the letters you entered are not unique among commands, the CLI “narrows” the set. For example:

```plaintext
mail3.example.com> set (type the Tab key)
setgateway, sethostname, settime, settz
mail3.example.com> seth (typing the Tab again completes the entry with sethostname)
```

For both the history and file completion features of the CLI, you must type Enter or Return to invoke the command.

**Configuration Changes**

You can make configuration changes while email operations proceed normally. Configuration changes will not take effect until you complete the following steps:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Issue the <strong>commit</strong> command at the command prompt.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Give the <strong>commit</strong> command the input required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>Receive confirmation of the <strong>commit</strong> procedure at the CLI.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Changes to configuration that have not been committed will be recorded but not put into effect until the **commit** command is run.
Not all commands require the \texttt{commit} command to be run. See Chapter 1, “AsyncOS CLI Quick Reference Guide” for a summary of commands that require commit to be run before their changes take effect.

Exiting the CLI session, system shutdown, reboot, failure, or issuing the \texttt{clear} command clears changes that have not yet been committed.

**General Purpose CLI Commands**

This section describes the commands used to commit or clear changes, to get help, and to quit the command-line interface.

**Committing Configuration Changes**

The \texttt{commit} command is critical to saving configuration changes to the appliance. Many configuration changes are not effective until you enter the \texttt{commit} command. (A few commands do not require you to use the \texttt{commit} command for changes to take effect. The \texttt{commit} command applies configuration changes made since the last \texttt{commit} command or the last \texttt{clear} command was issued. You may include comments up to 255 characters. Changes are not verified as committed until you receive confirmation along with a timestamp.

Entering comments after the commit command is optional.

```shell
mail3.example.com> commit

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

[]> Changed "psinet" IP Interface to a different IP address

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n
Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT
```

**Note** To successfully commit changes, you must be at the top-level command prompt. Type Return at an empty prompt to move up one level in the command line hierarchy.

**Clearing Configuration Changes**

The \texttt{clear} command clears any configuration changes made since the last \texttt{commit} or \texttt{clear} command was issued.

```shell
mail3.example.com> clear

Are you sure you want to clear all changes since the last commit? [Y]> y
Changes cleared: Mon Jan 01 12:00:01 2003
mail3.example.com>
```
**Batch Commands**

AsyncOS includes support for batch command formats that allow you to execute certain CLI commands using a new, single-line CLI format. This format reduces the number of inputs required to complete tasks and provides a mechanism allowing you to easily automate common configuration tasks. Batch commands also allow you to issue commands remotely using an SSH client. This enables you to easily script CLI commands and execute them on multiple appliances at one time.

Not all commands have a batch equivalent, but all batch commands can be executed as non-batch commands.

Batch command syntax is dependent on the specific command being used. Please see the appropriate CLI example in Chapter 3, “The Commands: Reference Examples” for more information about syntax specific to that command.

**Batch Command Example**

In the following example, the sendergroup REDLIST is created. It is then associated with the policy THROTTLED, and then the sender ‘possible_spammer.com’ is added to the sender group.

To execute this action using the CLI:

```bash
example.com> listenerconfig
```

Currently configured listeners:

1. IncomingMail (on Management, 192.168.42.42/24) SMTP TCP Port 25 Public
2. OutgoingMail (on Data 2, 192.168.40.42/24) SMTP TCP Port 25 Private
Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new listener.
- EDIT - Modify a listener.
- DELETE - Remove a listener.
- SETUP - Change global settings.

[]> edit

Enter the name or number of the listener you wish to edit.

[]> IncomingMail

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NAME - Change the name of the listener.
- INTERFACE - Change the interface.
- LIMITS - Change the injection limits.
- SETUP - Configure general options.
- HOSTACCESS - Modify the Host Access Table.
- RCPTACCESS - Modify the Recipient Access Table.
- BOUNCECONFIG - Choose the bounce profile to use for messages injected on this listener.

- MASQUERADE - Configure the Domain Masquerading Table.
- DOMAINMAP - Configure domain mappings.

[]> HOSTACCESS

There are currently 4 policies defined.

There are currently 5 sender groups.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- MOVE - Move an entry.
- DEFAULT - Set the defaults.
- PRINT - Display the table.
- IMPORT - Import a table from a file.
- EXPORT - Export the table to a file.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.

[>] NEW

1. New Sender Group
2. New Policy

[1]> 1

Enter a name for this sender group. (optional)

[>] REDLIST

Enter the hosts to add. CIDR addresses such as 10.1.1.0/24 are allowed.

IP address ranges such as 10.1.1.10-20 are allowed. IP subnets such as
10.2.3. are allowed.

Hostnames such as crm.example.com are allowed.

Partial hostnames such as .example.com are allowed.

Ranges of SenderBase Reputation scores such as SBRS[7.5:10.0] are
allowed.

SenderBase Network Owner IDs such as SBO:12345 are allowed.

Remote blacklist queries such as dnslist[query.blacklist.example] are
allowed.

Separate multiple hosts with commas

[>] possible_spammer.com

Select a behavior for this entry.
1. Accept
2. Relay
3. Reject
4. TCP Refuse
5. Continue
6. Policy: ACCEPTED
7. Policy: BLOCKED
8. Policy: THROTTLED
9. Policy: TRUSTED

[1]> 8

Enter a comment for this sender group.

[]>

There are currently 4 policies defined.
There are currently 6 sender groups.

To perform the same action using a CLI batch command:

```bash
example.com> listenerconfig edit IncomingMail hostaccess new sendergroup REDLIST possible_spammer.com Policy: "THROTTLED"
```
CHAPTER 3

The Commands: Reference Examples

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Advanced Malware Protection, page 3-2
- Anti-Spam, page 3-3
- Anti-Virus, page 3-14
- Command Line Management, page 3-19
- Configuration File Management, page 3-23
- Cluster Management, page 3-30
- Data Loss Prevention, page 3-33
- Domain Keys, page 3-38
- DMARC Verification, page 3-57
- DNS, page 3-62
- General Management/Administration/Troubleshooting, page 3-76
- LDAP, page 3-141
- Mail Delivery Configuration/Monitoring, page 3-155
- Networking Configuration / Network Tools, page 3-220
- Outbreak Filters, page 3-256
- Policy Enforcement, page 3-261
- Logging and Alerts, page 3-335
- Reporting, page 3-362
- Senderbase, page 3-370
- SMTP Services Configuration, page 3-372
- System Setup, page 3-410
- URL Filtering, page 3-420
- User Management, page 3-424
- Virtual Appliance Management, page 3-432
How to Read the Listing

For each command, there is a description and at least one example of the command being used. The Usage section specifies the following command attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Does the command require a commit command to be implemented on the appliance?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Is the command restricted to a particular mode (cluster, group, or machine)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>Does the command permit a batch format?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information about Centralized Management, please see the user guide for your release of AsyncOS.

For more information about batch formats, please see “Command Line Interface: The Basics” on page 1.

Advanced Malware Protection

ampconfig

Configure file reputation filtering and file analysis. Do not modify advanced options without guidance from Cisco TAC.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format

You can use the batch format of the ampconfig command to enable and disable file reputation and file analysis services.

To enable Advanced Malware Protection services:

```
ampconfig setup enable [setup_options]
```

Setup options are:

```
-- file analysis
-- amp_timeout
```

Example:

```
ampconfig setup enable --file_analysis=yes
```

To disable both file reputation and file analysis functionality:
ampconfig setup disable

To disable only file analysis functionality:
ampconfig setup disable file_analysis

Example

> ampconfig

File Reputation: Disabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Configure Advanced-Malware protection service.
[>] setup

File Reputation: Disabled
Would you like to use File Reputation? [Y]>

Would you like to use File Analysis? [Y]>

Specify AMP processing timeout (in seconds)
[120]>

Advanced-Malware protection is now enabled on the system.
Please note: you must issue the 'policyconfig' command (CLI) or
Mail Policies (GUI) to configure advanced malware scanning behavior
for default and custom Incoming Mail Policies.
This is recommended for your DEFAULT policy.

File Reputation: Enabled
File Analysis: Enabled

Anti-Spam

This section contains the following commands:
- antispamconfig
- antispamstatus
- antispamupdate
- incomingrelayconfig
antispamconfig

Description

Configure anti-spam policy.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

The following examples demonstrates the configuration for Anti-Spam functionality.

Table 3-1 antispamconfig - Anti-Spam Configuration

mail3.example.com> antispamconfig

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- IRONPORT - Configure IronPort Anti-Spam.
- MULTISCAN - Configure IronPort Intelligent Multi-Scan.

[]> ironport

IronPort Anti-Spam scanning: Disabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Edit IronPort Anti-Spam settings.

[]> setup

IronPort Anti-Spam scanning: Disabled

Would you like to use IronPort Anti-Spam scanning? [Y]> y

The IronPort Anti-Spam License Agreement is displayed (if you have not already accepted it).
antispamstatus

Description
Display anti-spam status.

Usage
Commit: This command does not require a `commit'.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

Do you accept the above IronPort Anti-Spam license agreement? [>] Y

What is the largest size message that IronPort Anti-Spam scanning should scan?
[131072]>

Please specify the IronPort Anti-Spam scanning timeout (in seconds)
[60]>

Would you like to enable regional scanning? [N]>

IronPort Anti-Spam scanning is now enabled on the system. Please note: you must issue the `policyconfig' command (CLI) or Mail Policies (GUI) to configure IronPort scanning behavior for default and custom Incoming and Outgoing Mail Policies. This is recommended for your DEFAULT policy.

IronPort Anti-Spam scanning: Enabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Edit IronPort Anti-Spam settings.
[>]
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

```
Table 3-2  antispamstatus - Anti-Spam

mail3.example.com> antispamstatus

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- IRONPORT - Display IronPort Anti-Spam version and rule information.
- MULTISCAN - Display Intelligent Multi-Scan version and rule information.

[>] ironport

Component                                Last Update                  Version
CASE Core Files                          Base Version                 2.7.1-101
Structural Rules                         Base Version
                                        2.7.1-101-20091008_021703
CASE Utilities                           Base Version                 2.7.1-101
Web Reputation DB                        Never updated                20050725_000000
Web Reputation Rules                     Never updated
                                        20050725_000000-20050725_000000

Last download attempt made on: Never
```

antispamupdate

Description

Manually request an immediate update of Anti-Spam rules and related CASE components. This also includes the Anti-Spam rules and CASE components used by Intelligent Multi-Scan (IMS), but not for the third-party anti-spam engines used by IMS.

Usage

This command does not require a ‘commit’.
This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto).

This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

```plaintext
Table 3-3  antispamupdate

mail3.example.com> antispamupdate

Requesting check for new CASE definitions
```

**incomingrelayconfig**

**Description**

Use the `incomingrelayconfig` command to enable and configure the Incoming Relays feature. In the following examples, the Incoming Relays feature is first enabled, and then two relays are added, one is modified, and one is deleted.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.
Example: Enabling Incoming Relays
Configuring an Incoming Relay

Table 3-4 incomingrelayconfig

mail3.example.com> incomingrelayconfig

Incoming relays: Disabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Edit update configuration.
- RELAYLIST - Configure incoming relays.

[]> setup

This command helps your IronPort appliance determine the sender's originating IP address.

You should ONLY enable this command if your IronPort appliance is NOT directly connected to the Internet as the "first hop" in your email infrastructure.

You should configure this feature if other MTAs or servers are configured at your network's perimeter to relay mail to your IronPort appliance.

Do you want to enable and define incoming relays? [N]> y

Incoming relays: Enabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Edit update configuration.
- RELAYLIST - Configure incoming relays.

[]> relaylist
There are no relays defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new entry

[]> new

Enter a name for this incoming relay (Ex: "first-hop")

[]> first-hop

Enter the IP address of the incoming relay. CIDR addresses such as 10.1.1.0/24 are allowed. IP address ranges such as 10.1.1.10-20 are allowed.

IP subnets such as 10.2.3. are allowed. Hostnames such as crm.example.com are allowed.

Partial hostnames such as .example.com are allowed.

[]> 192.168.1.1

Do you want to use the "Received:" header or a custom header to determine the originating IP address?

1. Use "Received:" header

2. Use a custom header

[1]> 1

Within the "Received:" header, enter the special character or string after which to begin parsing for the originating IP address:

[from]> [

Within the headers, enter the position of the "Received:" header that contains the originating IP address:
There is 1 relay defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new entry
- EDIT - Modify an entry
- DELETE - Remove an entry
- PRINT - Display the table

[1]> print

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relay name</th>
<th>IP address</th>
<th>To parse</th>
<th>After</th>
<th>Position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>first-hop</td>
<td>192.168.1.1</td>
<td>Received</td>
<td>[</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is 1 relay defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new entry
- EDIT - Modify an entry
- DELETE - Remove an entry
- PRINT - Display the table

[1]> new

Enter a name for this incoming relay (Ex: 'first-hop')

[1]> second-hop
Enter the IP address of the incoming relay. CIDR addresses such as 10.1.1.0/24 are allowed. IP address ranges such as 10.1.1.10-20 are allowed.

IP subnets such as 10.2.3. are allowed. Hostnames such as crm.example.com are allowed.

Partial hostnames such as .example.com are allowed.

192.168.1.2

Do you want to use the "Received:" header or a custom header to determine the originating IP address?

1. Use "Received:" header
2. Use a custom header

2

Enter the custom header name that contains the originating IP address:

X-Connecting-IP

There are 2 relays defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new entry
- EDIT - Modify an entry
- DELETE - Remove an entry
- PRINT - Display the table

print

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Incoming relay name</th>
<th>IP address</th>
<th>Header to parse</th>
<th>Match after</th>
<th>Received position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Table 3-4 incomingrelayconfig

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>first-hop</td>
<td>192.168.1.1</td>
<td>Received</td>
<td>[</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second-hop</td>
<td>192.168.1.2</td>
<td>X-Connecting-IP</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are 2 relays defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new entry
- EDIT - Modify an entry
- DELETE - Remove an entry
- PRINT - Display the table

[1]> delete

1. first-hop: 192.168.1.1
2. second_hop: 192.168.1.2

Enter the number of the entry you wish to delete:

[1]> 1

Incoming relay "first-hop" deleted.

There is 1 relay defined.

sblconfig

Description

Configure End-User Safelist/Blocklist.

Note

Safelists/Blocklists must be enabled on the appliance via the GUI in order to run this command.
Usage

**Commit**: This command does not require a 'commit'.

**Batch Command**: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format - Import

**Batch Format**

Replaces all entries in the End-User Safelist/Blocklist with entries present in the specified file.

```
slblconfig import <filename> <ignore invalid entries>
```

- **filename** - Name of the file that has to be imported. The file must be in the /configuration directory on the appliance.
- **ignore invalid entries** - Whether to ignore invalid entries or not. Either 'Yes' or 'No.'

Batch Format - Export

Exports all entries in the End-User Safelist/Blocklist to a file the appliance.

```
slblconfig export
```

The appliance saves a .CSV file to the /configuration directory using the following naming convention:

```
slbl<timestamp><serial number>.csv
```

Example - Importing Safelist/Blocklist Entries

**Table 3-5**  
**Example of slblconfig**

```
mail.example.com> slblconfig
```

End-User Safelist/Blocklist: Enabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **IMPORT** - Replace all entries in the End-User Safelist/Blocklist.
- **EXPORT** - Export all entries from the End-User Safelist/Blocklist.

```
[>] import
```
Currently available End-User Safelist/Blocklist files:

1. slbl.csv

Choose the file to import from.

[1]> 1

Do you want to ignore invalid entries? [Y]> Y

End-User Safelist/Blocklist import has been initiated...
Please wait while this operation executes.

End-User Safelist/Blocklist successfully imported.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- IMPORT - Replace all entries in the End-User Safelist/Blocklist.
- EXPORT - Export all entries from the End-User Safelist/Blocklist.

[]>

**Anti-Virus**

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- `antivirusconfig`
- `antivirusstatus`
- `antivirusupdate`

**antivirusconfig**

**Description**

Configure anti-virus policy.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

In the following example, the `antivirusconfig` command is used to enable Sophos virus scanning on the system and set the time-out value to 60 seconds. To configure the update server, update interval, and optional proxy server, see “updateconfig” on page 135.

Note

The first time you invoke the `antivirusconfig` command, you may be presented with a license agreement, if you did not accept the license during the `systemsetup` command. If you do not accept the license agreement, the Sophos virus scanning engine will not be enabled on the appliance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-6</th>
<th>antivirusconfig</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mail3.example.com&gt; <strong>antivirusconfig</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sophos Anti-Virus: Disabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Configure Sophos Anti-Virus.

[]> **setup**

Sophos Anti-Virus scanning: Disabled

Would you like to use Sophos Anti-Virus scanning? [Y]> **y**

(First time users see the license agreement displayed here.)

Please specify the Anti-Virus scanning timeout (in seconds)

[60]> **60**

Sophos Anti-Virus scanning is now enabled on the system.

Please note: you must issue the 'policyconfig' command (CLI) or Mail Policies (GUI) to configure Sophos Anti-Virus scanning behavior for default and custom Incoming and Outgoing Mail Policies.
Table 3-6  
\textit{antivirusconfig (Continued)}

This is recommended for your DEFAULT policy.

Sophos Anti-Virus: Enabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Configure Sophos Anti-Virus.

[>]

mail3.example.com>

Viewing Anti-Virus IDE Details

AsyncOS provides detailed status on the specific anti-virus signature files (IDE files) that have been downloaded by the appliance. You can access these details using the \texttt{antivirusconfig -> detail} subcommand. For example:

Table 3-7  \textit{antivirusconfig - Viewing IDE Details}

mail3.example.com> \texttt{antivirusconfig}

Sophos Anti-Virus: Enabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Configure Sophos Anti-Virus.
- STATUS - View Sophos Anti-Virus status.
- DETAIL - View Sophos Anti-Virus detail.

[> detail

Sophos Anti-Virus:

Product - 3.87
Engine - 2.25.0
antivirusstatus

Description

Display Anti-Virus status.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-8  antivirusstatus

mail3.example.com> antivirusstatus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SAV Engine Version</td>
<td>3.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDE Serial</td>
<td>2004101801</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Update</td>
<td>Mon Sep 27 14:21:25 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last IDE Update</td>
<td>Mon Oct 18 02:56:48 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Update Attempt</td>
<td>Mon Oct 18 11:11:44 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Update Success</td>
<td>Mon Oct 18 02:56:47 2004</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

mail3.example.com>

antivirusupdate

Description

Manually update virus definitions.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto).

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

```
Table 3-9 antivirusupdate

mail3.example.com> antivirusupdate

Requesting update of virus definitions

mail3.example.com>
```

Command Line Management

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- `commit`
- `commitdetail`
- `clearchanges` or `clear`
- `help` or `h` or `?`
- `rollbackconfig`
- `quit` or `q` or `exit`

**commit**

**Description**

Commit changes. Entering comments after the commit command is optional.

**Usage**

**Commit**: N/A

**Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.
Example.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-10</th>
<th>commit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mail3.example.com&gt; commit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Please enter some comments describing your changes:


| Changed "psinet" IP Interface to a different IP address |

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT

commitdetail

Description

Display detailed information about the last commit.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-11  commitdetail

mail3.example.com> commitdetail

Commit at Mon Apr 18 13:46:28 2005 PDT with comments: "Enabled loopback".

mail3.example.com>

clearchanges or clear

Description

The clear command clears any configuration changes made since the last commit or clear command was issued.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

Table 3-12  clear

mail3.example.com> clear

Are you sure you want to clear all changes since the last commit? [Y]> y

Changes cleared: Mon Jan 01 12:00:01 2003

mail3.example.com>

help or h or ?

Description

The help command lists all available CLI commands and gives a brief description of each command. The help command can be invoked by typing either help or a single question mark (?) at the command prompt.
Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format

Example

Table 3-13  help

mail3.example.com> help

rollbackconfig

The rollbackconfig command allows you to rollback to one of the previously committed 10 configurations.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

mail.example.com> rollbackconfig

Previous Commits:  
Committed On | User | Description
--- | --- | ---
Fri May 23 06:53:43 2014 | admin | new user
Fri May 23 06:50:57 2014 | admin | rollback
Fri May 23 05:47:26 2014 | admin |
Fri May 23 05:45:51 2014 | admin | edit user

Enter the number of the config to revert to.  
[1]> 2

Are you sure you want to roll back the configuration? [N]> y

Reverted to Fri May 23 06:50:57 2014  admin rollback

Do you want to commit this configuration now? [N]> y

Committed the changes successfully
quit or q or exit

Description

The `quit` command logs you out of the CLI application. Configuration changes that have not been committed are cleared. The `quit` command has no effect on email operations. Logout is logged into the log files. (Typing `exit` is the same as typing `quit`.)

Usage

**Commit**: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format

Example

```
Table 3-14   quit

mail3.example.com> quit

Configuration changes entered but not committed. Exiting will lose changes.

Type 'commit' at the command prompt to commit changes.

Are you sure you wish to exit? [N]> Y
```

Configuration File Management

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- `loadconfig`
- `mailconfig`
- `resetconfig`
- `saveconfig`
- `showconfig`

loadconfig

Description

Load a configuration file.
Loading configuration on clustered machines is supported only using GUI. For instructions, see *Cisco AsyncOS for Email User Guide*.

**Usage**

**Commit**: This command requires a 'commit'.

**Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

In this example, a new configuration file is imported from a local location.

**Table 3-15**

```
loadconfig
```

```
mail3.example.com> loadconfig

1. Paste via CLI
2. Load from file
[1]> 2

Enter the name of the file to import:

[]> changed.config.xml

Values have been loaded.

Be sure to run "commit" to make these settings active.

mail3.example.com> commit

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

[]> loaded new configuration file

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT
In this example, a new configuration file is pasted directly at the command line. (Remember to type Control-D on a blank line to end the paste command.) Then, the system setup wizard is used to change the default hostname, IP address, and default gateway information. Finally, the changes are committed.

Table 3-16  loadconfig - Example 2

mail3.example.com> loadconfig

1. Paste via CLI
2. Load from file

[1]> 1

Paste the configuration file now.
Press CTRL-D on a blank line when done.

(The configuration file is pasted until the end tag </config>. Control-D is entered on a separate line.)

Values have been loaded.
Be sure to run 'commit' to make these settings active.

mail3.example.com> systemsetup

(The system setup wizard is run.)

mail3.example.com> commit

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

/> pasted new configuration file and changed default settings via systemsetup

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT
**mailconfig**

**Description**

To test the configuration, you can use the `mailconfig` command immediately to send a test email containing the system configuration data you just created with the `systemsetup` command.

**Usage**

- **Commit**: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
- **Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
- **Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format

**Example**

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-17  mailconfig</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

mail3.example.com> mailconfig

Please enter the email address to which you want to send the configuration file. Separate multiple addresses with commas.

[]> user@example.com

The configuration file has been sent to user@example.com.

mail3.example.com>

Send the configuration to a mailbox to which you have access to confirm that the system is able to send email on your network.
```

**resetconfig**

**Description**

When physically transferring the appliance, you may want to start with factory defaults. The `resetconfig` command resets *all* configuration values to factory defaults. This command is extremely destructive, and it should only be used when you are transferring the unit or as a last resort to solving configuration issues. It is recommended you run the `systemsetup` command after reconnecting to the CLI after you have run the `resetconfig` command.
Chapter 3  The Commands: Reference Examples

Configuration File Management

Note

The `resetconfig` command only works when the appliance is in the offline state. When the `resetconfig` command completes, the appliance is automatically returned to the online state, even before you run the `systemsetup` command again. If mail delivery was suspended before you issued the `resetconfig` command, the mail will attempt to be delivered again when the `resetconfig` command completes.

Warning

The `resetconfig` command will return all network settings to factory defaults, potentially disconnecting you from the CLI, disabling services that you used to connect to the appliance (FTP, Telnet, SSH, HTTP, HTTPS), and even removing additional user accounts you created with the `userconfig` command. Do not use this command if you are not able to reconnect to the CLI using the Serial interface or the default settings on the Management port through the default Admin user account.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto). This command requires access to the local file system.

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

**Table 3-18**  *resetconfig*

mail3.example.com> **offline**

Delay (seconds, minimum 30):

[30]> **45**

Waiting for listeners to exit...
Receiving suspended.
Waiting for outgoing deliveries to finish...
Mail delivery suspended.

mail3.example.com> **resetconfig**

Are you sure you want to reset all configuration values? [N]> **Y**

All settings have been restored to the factory default.

**saveconfig**

**Description**

The `saveconfig` command saves the configuration file with a unique filename to the `configuration` directory.

**Note**

If you are on a clustered environment, this command saves the complete cluster configuration. To run this command on a clustered machine, change your configuration mode to cluster.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format
Example

Table 3-19  saveconfig

```plaintext
mail3.example.com> saveconfig

Do you want to include passwords? Please be aware that a configuration without passwords will fail when reloaded with loadconfig. [N]> y

File written on machine "mail3.example.com" to the location "/configuration/C360-421C73B18CFB05784A83-B03A99E71ED8-20140130T032939.xml".

Configuration saved.

mail3.example.com>
```

showconfig

Description

The `showconfig` command prints the current configuration to the screen.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format
Cluster Management

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- clusterconfig
- clustercheck

clusterconfig

Description

The `clusterconfig` command is used to configure cluster-related settings. If this machine is not part of a cluster, running clusterconfig will give you the option of joining a cluster or creating a new cluster.

The `clusterconfig` command provides additional subcommands:

Non-Cluster Commands

The following commands are available when you are not in a cluster.

Example

Table 3-20  showconfig

ail3.example.com> showconfig

Do you want to include passwords? Please be aware that a configuration without passwords will fail when reloaded with loadconfig.

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
<!DOCTYPE config SYSTEM "config.dtd">

<!--
Product: IronPort model number Messaging Gateway Appliance(tm)
Model Number: model number
Version: version of AsyncOS installed
Serial Number: serial number
Current Time: current time and date
[The remainder of the configuration file is printed to the screen.]
• \texttt{clusterconfig new <name>} – This will create a new cluster with the given name. This machine will be a member of this cluster and a member of a default cluster group called "Main Group".
  \hspace{1em} <name> - The name of the new cluster.

• \texttt{clusterconfig join [--port=xx] <ip_of_remote_cluster> [<admin_password>]<groupname>} – This will add this machine to a cluster.
  \hspace{1em} <ip_of_remote_cluster> - The IP address of another machine in the cluster.
  \hspace{1em} <admin_password> - The admin password of the cluster. This should not be specified if joining over CCS.
  \hspace{1em} <groupname> - The name of the group to join.
  \hspace{1em} <port> - The port of the remote machine to connect to (defaults to 22).

• \texttt{clusterconfig prepjoin print}
  This will display the information needed to prepare the joining of this machine to a cluster over a CCS port.

\textbf{Cluster Commands}

The following commands are available when you are in a cluster.

• \texttt{clusterconfig addgroup <groupname>} – Creates a new cluster group. The group starts off with no members.

• \texttt{clusterconfig renamegroup <old_groupname> <new_groupname>} – Change the name of a cluster group.

• \texttt{clusterconfig deletegroup <groupname> [new_groupname]} – Remove a cluster group.
  \hspace{1em} <groupname> - Name of the cluster group to remove.
  \hspace{1em} <new_groupname> - The cluster group to put machines of the old group into.

• \texttt{clusterconfig setgroup <machinename> <groupname>} – Sets (or changes) which group a machine is a member of.
  \hspace{1em} <machinename> - The name of the machine to set.
  \hspace{1em} <groupname> - The group to set the machine to.

• \texttt{clusterconfig removemachine <machinename>} – Remove a machine from the cluster.

• \texttt{clusterconfig setname <name>} – Changes the name of the cluster to the given name.

• \texttt{clusterconfig list} – Display all the machines currently in the cluster.

• \texttt{clusterconfig connstatus} – Display all the machines currently in the cluster and add routing details for disconnected machines.

• \texttt{clusterconfig disconnect <machinename>} – This will temporarily detach a machine from the cluster.
  \hspace{1em} <machinename> - The name of the machine to disconnect.

• \texttt{clusterconfig reconnect <machinename>} – This will restore connections with machines that were detached with the “disconnect” command.
• `clusterconfig prepjoin new <serial_number> <hostname> <user_key>` – This will add a new host that is to join the cluster over the CCSport.

  <serial_number> - The serial number of the machine being added.
  <hostname> - The host name of the machine being added.
  <user_key> - The SSH user key from the "prepjoin print" command from the joining machine.

• `clusterconfig prepjoin delete <serial_number|hostname>` – This will remove a host that was previously indicated to be added from the "prepjoin new" command. This is only necessary to be used if you later decide not to add the host. When a host is successfully added to the cluster, its prepjoin information is automatically removed.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to cluster mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

For an explanation of the `clusterconfig` command and its uses, please see the `Cisco IronPort AsyncOS Advanced Configuration Guide`.

clustercheck

Description

The `clustercheck` command checks that all configuration databases in the cluster are synchronized.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

For an explanation of the `clustercheck` command and its uses, please see the `Cisco IronPort AsyncOS Advanced Configuration Guide`. 
Data Loss Prevention

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- `dlprollback`
- `dlpstatus`
- `dlpupdate`
- `emconfig`

### dlprollback

**Description**

Rollback DLP engine and config to the previous version.

**Note**

DLP must already be configured via the DLP Global Settings page in the GUI before you can use the `dlprollback` command.

**Warning**

This command will revert your appliance to older DLP policies. You must re-enable DLP policies in Outbound Mail Policies so that DLP scanning can be resumed successfully.

**Usage**

- **Commit**: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
- **Cluster Management**: This command is can be used at cluster, group or machine mode.
- **Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

**Table 3-21 Example of dlprollback**

```
mail.example.com> dlprollback
```

This will revert to older DLP policies.

**IMPORTANT**: After rollback, you must re-enable DLP policies in Outbound Mail Policies so that DLP scanning can be resumed successfully.

Do you wish to rollback? [N]> Y
dlpstatus

Request version information for DLP Engine.

**Note**
DLP must already be configured via the DLP Global Settings page in the GUI before you can use the `dlpstatus` command.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is can be used at cluster, group or machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

**Table 3-22 Example of dlpstatus**

```plaintext
mail.example.com> dlpstatus

Component       Version     Last Updated
RSA DLP Engine   3.0.2.31     Never updated
```

dlpupdate

**Description**

Update RSA DLP Engine.

**Note**
DLP must already be configured via the DLP Global Settings page in the GUI before you can use the `dlpupdate` command.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is can be used at cluster, group or machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command supports a batch format.
**Batch Format**

The batch format of the `dlpupdate` command forces an update of the DLP engine even if no changes are detected.

```
dlpupdate [force]
```

**Example**

**Table 3-23  Example of dlpupdate**

```
mail.example.com> dlpupdate

Checking for available updates. This may take a few seconds..

Component     Status
RSA DLP Engine Not Available
```

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Enable or disable automatic updates for DLP Engine.

```
[>] setup

Automatic updates for DLP are enabled

Do you wish to disable automatic updates for DLP Engine? [N]> Y
```

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Enable or disable automatic updates for DLP Engine.

```
[>]
```

**emconfig**

**Description**

Configure the interoperability settings for RSA Enterprise Manager.
Note: RSA Enterprise Manager must already be configured via the DLP Global Settings page in the GUI before you can use the `emconfig` command. You cannot enable this functionality using the CLI, only edit the existing settings.

Usage

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is can be used at cluster, group or machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

Batch Format

To set up a connection between the Email Security appliance and RSA Enterprise Manager:

```
emconfig setup [options]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--remote_host</td>
<td>Hostname or IP address of the RSA Enterprise Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--remote_port</td>
<td>Port to connect to on RSA Enterprise Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--local_port</td>
<td>Port on the ESA for Enterprise Manager to connect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--enable_ssl</td>
<td>Enable SSL communication to the RSA Enterprise Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use 1 to enable, 0 to disable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example of Connecting to RSA Enterprise Manager

vm10esa0031.qa> emconfig

RSA Enterprise Manager connection status is: "UNKNOWN"

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Edit RSA Enterprise Manager interop config.

[]> setup

RSA Enterprise Manager: test.example.com:20000
Local port for EM to connect to: 20002
SSL Communication to RSA EM: disabled
Enter hostname of RSA Enterprise Manager:
[test.example.com]> em.example.com

Enter port number of RSA Enterprise Manager:
[20000]>

Enter local port for EM to connect:
[20002]>

Enable SSL communication to EM [N]>

Advanced Settings:
- RSA Enterprise Manager GUID: emlocalsite
- Device Vendor name: Cisco Systems
- Device Status Interval: 5 seconds
- Polling Cycle Interval: 30 seconds
- Connection Throttle Interval: 0 milliseconds
Domain Keys

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- domainkeysconfig

domainkeysconfig

Description

Configure DomainKeys/DKIM support.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format - Signing Profiles

The batch format of the domainkeysconfig command can be used to create, edit, or delete signing profiles.

- Adding a DomainKeys/DKIM signing profile:

```
domainkeysconfig profiles signing new <name> <type> <domain> <selector> <user-list> [options]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;name&gt;</td>
<td>Name of domain profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;type&gt;</td>
<td>Type of domain. Can be dk or dkim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;domain&gt;</td>
<td>Domain field of domain profile. This forms the d tag of the Domain-Keys signature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;selector&gt;</td>
<td>Selector field of domain profile. This forms the s tag of the Domain-Keys signature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;user-list&gt;</td>
<td>Comma separated list of domain profile users. Users are used to match against email addresses to determine if a specific domain profile should be used to sign an email. Use the special keyword all to match all domain users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[options]

--key_name The name of the private key that will be used for signing.

--canon The canonicalization algorithm to use when signing by DK. Currently supported algorithms are simple and nofws. Default is nofws.

--body_canon The body canonicalization algorithm of to use when signing by DKIM. Currently supported algorithms are simple and relaxed. Default is simple.

--header_canon The headers canonicalization algorithm of to use when signing by DKIM. Currently supported algorithms are simple and relaxed. Default is simple.

--body_length Number of bytes of canonicalized body that are used to calculate the signature. Is used only in DKIM profiles. If used this value becomes 1 tag of the signature. By default it is not used.
Editing a signing profile:

```
domainkeysconfig profiles signing edit <name>
[signing-profile-options]
```

### Table 3-25 domainkeysconfig New Signing Profile Arguments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--headers_select</td>
<td>Determines how to select headers for signing. Is used only in DKIM profiles. Can be one of all, standard, standard_and_custom. all means to sign all non-repetitive headers. &quot;standard&quot; means to sign predefined set of well known headers such as Subject, From, To, Sender, MIME headers etc. standard_and_custom means to sign well known headers and user-defined set of headers. Default is standard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--custom_headers</td>
<td>User-defined set of headers to sign. Is used only in DKIM profiles if headers_select is standard_and_custom. Default is empty set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--i_tag</td>
<td>Determines whether to include the i tag into the signature. Possible values are yes or no. Default is yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--agent_identity</td>
<td>The identity of the user or agent on behalf of which this message is signed. The syntax is a standard email address where the local-part may be omitted. Domain part of this address should be a sub-domain of or equal to the &lt;domain&gt;. This option is only applicable if --i_tag value is set to yes. Default is an empty local-part followed by an @ and by the &lt;domain&gt;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--q_tag</td>
<td>Determines whether to include the q tag into the signature. Possible values are yes or no. Default is yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--t_tag</td>
<td>Determines whether to include the t tag into the signature. Possible values are yes or no. Default is yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--x_tag</td>
<td>Determines whether to include the x tag into the signature. Possible values are yes or no. Default is yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--expiration_time</td>
<td>Number of seconds before signature is expired. Is used only in DKIM profiles. This value becomes a difference of x and t tags of the signature. This option is only applicable if --x_tag value is set to yes. Default is 31536000 seconds (one year).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--z_tag</td>
<td>Determines whether to include the z tag into the signature. Possible values are yes or no. Default is no.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Signing profile options:
- rename <name>
- domain <domain>
- selector <selector>
- canonicalization <canon>
- canonicalization <header_canon> <body_canon>
- key <key_name>
- bodylength <body_length>
- headerselect <header_select>
- customheaders <custom_headers>
- itag <i_tag> [<agent_identity>]
- qtag <q_tag>
- ttag <t_tag>
- xtag <x_tag> [expiration_time]
- ztag <z_tag>
- new <user-list>
- delete <user-list>
- print
- clear

• Delete a signing profile:
  
  domainkeysconfig profiles signing delete <name>

• Show a list of signing profiles:
  
  domainkeysconfig profiles signing list

• Print the details of a signing profile:
  
  domainkeysconfig profiles signing print <name>

• Test a signing profile:
  
  domainkeysconfig profiles signing test <name>

• Import a local copy of your signing profiles:
  
  domainkeysconfig profiles signing import <filename>
- Export a copy of your signing profile from the appliance:

    domainkeysconfig profiles signing export <filename>

- Delete all the signing profiles from the appliance:

    domainkeysconfig profiles signing clear

### Batch Format - Verification Profiles

- Create a new DKIM verification profile:

    domainkeysconfig profiles verification new <name> <verification-profile-options>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--name</td>
<td>The name of DKIM verification profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--min_key_size</td>
<td>The smallest key to be accepted. Possible key-length values (in bits) are 512, 768, 1024, 1536 and 2048. Default is 512.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--max_key_size</td>
<td>The largest key to be accepted. Possible key-length values (in bits) are 512, 768, 1024, 1536 and 2048. Default is 2048.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--max_signatures_num</td>
<td>A maximum number of signatures in the message to verify. Possible value is any positive number. Default is 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--key_query_timeout</td>
<td>A number of seconds before the key query is timed out. Possible value is any positive number. Default is 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--max_systemtime_divergence</td>
<td>A number of seconds to tolerate wall clock asynchronization between sender and verifier. Possible value is any positive number. Default is 60.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--use_body_length</td>
<td>Whether to use a body length parameter. Possible values are yes or no. Default is yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--tempfail_action</td>
<td>The SMTP action should be taken in case of temporary failure. Possible values are accept or reject. Default is accept.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--tempfail_response_code</td>
<td>The SMTP response code for rejected message in case of temporary failure. Possible value is number in 4xx format. Default is 451.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--tempfail_response_text</td>
<td>The SMTP response text for rejected message in case of temporary failure. Default is #4.7.5 Unable to verify signature - key server unavailable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 3-26  domainkeysconfig Verification Profile Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--permfail_action</td>
<td>The SMTP action should be taken in case of permanent failure. Possible values are accept or reject. Default is accept.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--permfail_response_code</td>
<td>The SMTP response code for rejected message in case of permanent failure. Possible value is number in 5xx format. Default is 550.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--permfail_response_text</td>
<td>The SMTP response text for rejected message in case of permanent failure. Default is #5.7.5 DKIM unauthenticated mail is prohibited.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Edit a verification profile:
  
  ```
  domainkeysconfig profiles verification edit <name> <verification-profile-options>
  ```

- Delete a verification profile:
  
  ```
  domainkeysconfig profiles verification delete <name>
  ```

- Print details of an existing verification profile:
  
  ```
  domainkeysconfig profiles verification print <name>
  ```

- Display a list of existing verification profiles:
  
  ```
  domainkeysconfig profiles verification list
  ```

- Import a file of verification profiles from a local machine:
  
  ```
  domainkeysconfig profiles verification import <filename>
  ```

- Export the verification profiles from the appliance:
  
  ```
  domainkeysconfig profiles verification export <filename>
  ```

- Delete all existing verification profiles from the appliance:
  
  ```
  domainkeysconfig profiles verification clear
  ```
Batch Format - Signing Keys

- Create a new signing key:

  `domainkeysconfig keys new <key_name> <key-options>`

- Edit a signing key:

  `domainkeysconfig keys edit <key_name> key <key-options>`

- Rename an existing signing key:

  `domainkeysconfig keys edit <key_name> rename <key_name>`

- To specify a public key:

  `domainkeysconfig keys publickey <key_name>`

- Delete a key:

  `domainkeysconfig keys delete <key_name>`

- Display a list of all signing keys:

  `domainkeysconfig keys list`

- Display all information about a specify signing key:

  `domainkeysconfig keys print <key_name>`

- Import signing keys from a local machine:

  `domainkeysconfig keys import <filename>`

### Table 3-27 domainkeysconfig Signing Keys Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--generate_key</td>
<td>Generate a private key. Possible key-length values (in bits) are 512, 768, 1024, 1536, and 2048.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--use_key</td>
<td>Use supplied private key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--public_key</td>
<td>Flag to derive and print to the screen a matching public key for the specified private key. If --generate_key is specified first, a new private key is generated first, followed by the display of a matching public key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• Export signing keys from the appliance:

    domainkeysconfig keys export <filename>

• Delete all signing keys on the appliance:

    domainkeysconfig keys clear

**Batch Format - Search for a Key or Profile**

• Search for a profile signing key:

    domainkeysconfig search <search_text>

**Batch Format - Global Settings**

• Modify global settings for Domain Keys/DKIM on your appliance:

    domainkeysconfig setup <setup_options>

    The option available is:

    – --sign_generated_msgs - Specify whether to sign system-generated messages. Possible values are yes or no.

**Example: Configuring Domain Keys via the CLI**

Use the domainkeysconfig command in the CLI to configure Domain Keys on your appliance.

The domainkeysconfig command has all of the features of the Mail Policies -> Domain Keys page. It also provides the ability to generate a sample Domain Keys DNS TXT record. For more information about generating sample Domain Keys DNS TXT records, see Creating a Sample Domain Keys DNS TXT Record, page 3-54.

In this example, a key is generated, and a domain profile is created:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-28</th>
<th>domainkeysconfig Example 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mail3.example.com&gt; domainkeysconfig</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Number of DK/DKIM Signing Profiles: 0

Number of Signing Keys: 0

Number of DKIM Verification Profiles: 1

Sign System-Generated Messages: Yes
Choose the operation you want to perform:

- PROFILES - Manage domain profiles.
- KEYS - Manage signing keys.
- SETUP - Change global settings.
- SEARCH - Search for domain profile or key.

[]> keys

No signing keys are defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new signing key.
- IMPORT - Import signing keys from a file.

[]> new

Enter a name for this signing key:

[]> TestKey

1. Generate a private key
2. Enter an existing key

[1]>

Enter the size (in bits) of this signing key:

1. 512
2. 768
3. 1024
4. 1536

5. 2048

[3]>

New key "TestKey" created.

There are currently 1 signing keys defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new signing key.
- EDIT - Modify a signing key.
- PUBLICKEY - Create a publickey from a signing key.
- DELETE - Delete a signing key.
- PRINT - Display signing keys.
- LIST - List signing keys.
- IMPORT - Import signing keys from a file.
- EXPORT - Export signing keys to a file.
- CLEAR - Clear all signing keys.

[]>

Number of DK/DKIM Signing Profiles: 0
Number of Signing Keys: 1
Number of DKIM Verification Profiles: 1
Sign System-Generated Messages: Yes

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- PROFILES - Manage domain profiles.
- KEYS - Manage signing keys.
- SETUP - Change global settings.
- SEARCH - Search for domain profile or key.

[]> profiles

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SIGNING - Manage signing profiles.
- VERIFICATION - Manage verification profiles.

[]> signing

No domain profiles are defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new domain profile.
- IMPORT - Import domain profiles from a file.

[]> new

Enter a name for this domain profile:

[]> Example

Enter type of domain profile:
1. dk
2. dkim
The domain field forms the basis of the public-key query. The value in this field MUST match the domain of the sending email address or MUST be one of the parent domains of the sending email address. This value becomes the "d" tag of the Domain-Keys signature.

Enter the domain name of the signing domain:

[2]> example.com

Selectors are arbitrary names below the ".domainkey." namespace. A selector value and length MUST be legal in the DNS namespace and in email headers with the additional provision that they cannot contain a semicolon. This value becomes the "s" tag of the DomainKeys Signature.

Enter selector:

[>] test

The private key which is to be used to sign messages must be entered. A corresponding public key must be published in the DNS following the form described in the DomainKeys documentation. If a key is not immediately available, a key can be entered at a later time.

Select the key-association method:

1. Create new key
2. Paste in key

3. Enter key at later time

4. Select existing key

[1]> 4

Enter the name or number of a signing key.

1. TestKey

[1]>

The canonicalization algorithm is the method by which the headers and content are prepared for presentation to the signing algorithm. Possible choices are "simple" and "relaxed".

Select canonicalization algorithm for headers:

1. simple
2. relaxed

[1]>

Select canonicalization algorithm for body:

1. simple
2. relaxed

[1]>

How would you like to sign headers:
1. Sign all existing, non-repeatable headers (except Return-Path header).

2. Sign "well-known" headers (Date, Subject, From, To, Cc, Reply-To, Message-ID, Sender, MIME headers).

3. Sign "well-known" headers plus a custom list of headers.

Body length is a number of bytes of the message body to sign.
This value becomes the "l" tag of the signature.

Which body length option would you like to use?
1. Whole body implied. No further message modification is possible.
2. Whole body auto-determined. Appending content is possible.
3. Specify a body length.

Would you like to fine-tune which tags should be used in the DKIM Signature? (yes/no) [N]

Finish by entering profile users. The following types of entries are allowed:
- Email address entries such as "joe@example.com".
- Domain entries such as "example.com".
- Partial domain entries such as ".example.com". For example, a partial domain of ".example.com" will match "sales.example.com". This sort of entry will not match the root domain ("example.com").
- Leave blank to match all domain users.

Enter user for this signing profile:
[\]> sales.example.com

Do you want to add another user? [N]>

There are currently 1 domain profiles defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new domain profile.
- EDIT - Modify a domain profile.
- DELETE - Delete a domain profile.
- PRINT - Display domain profiles.
- LIST - List domain profiles.
- TEST - Test if a domain profile is ready to sign.
- DNSTXT - Generate a matching DNS TXT record.
- IMPORT - Import domain profiles from a file.
- EXPORT - Export domain profiles to a file.
- CLEAR - Clear all domain profiles.

[\]>
Number of DK/DKIM Signing Profiles: 1
Number of Signing Keys: 1
Number of DKIM Verification Profiles: 1
Sign System-Generated Messages: Yes

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- PROFILES - Manage domain profiles.
- KEYS - Manage signing keys.
- SETUP - Change global settings.
- SEARCH - Search for domain profile or key.

[]>
Creating a Sample Domain Keys DNS TXT Record

mail3.example.com> domainkeysconfig

Number of DK/DKIM Signing Profiles: 1
Number of Signing Keys: 1
Number of DKIM Verification Profiles: 1
Sign System-Generated Messages: Yes

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- PROFILES - Manage domain profiles.
- KEYS - Manage signing keys.
- SETUP - Change global settings.
- SEARCH - Search for domain profile or key.

[]> profiles

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SIGNING - Manage signing profiles.
- VERIFICATION - Manage verification profiles.

[]> signing

There are currently 1 domain profiles defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new domain profile.
- EDIT - Modify a domain profile.
- DELETE - Delete a domain profile.
- PRINT - Display domain profiles.
3-55

Domain Keys

- LIST - List domain profiles.
- TEST - Test if a domain profile is ready to sign.
- DNSTXT - Generate a matching DNS TXT record.
- IMPORT - Import domain profiles from a file.
- EXPORT - Export domain profiles to a file.
- CLEAR - Clear all domain profiles.

[>] dnstxt

Enter the name or number of a domain profile.

1. Example

[1]>

The answers to the following questions will be used to construct DKIM text
record for DNS. It can be used to publish information about this profile.

Do you wish to constrain the local part of the signing identities
("i=" tag of "DKIM-Signature" header field) associated with this
domain profile? [N]>

Do you wish to include notes that may be of interest to a human (no
interpretation is made by any program)? [N]>

The "testing mode" can be set to specify that this domain is testing
DKIM and
that unverified email must not be treated differently from verified
e-mail.

Do you want to indicate the "testing mode"? [N]>
Do you wish to disable signing by subdomains of this domain? [N]>

The DKIM DNS TXT record is:

test._domainkey.example.com. IN TXT "v=DKIM1; p=MIGfMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4GNADCBiQKBgQDXARuM74DwF0+qAr3o9GH1x3yUOLk XzXbhfkgk4RBxdY7qghx4mb16NNc5y09nGdGybH3rR67LnyL/K5cgp1yCxi4RtoSd1pKZ cXQjziPKSqpApmtbypm4yT93mu4FfLkNzXJ4om7l/F5UEwQL42UwWp36fv7y+uM+y96n3 blR9wIDAQAB;"

There are currently 1 domain profiles defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new domain profile.
- EDIT - Modify a domain profile.
- DELETE - Delete a domain profile.
- PRINT - Display domain profiles.
- LIST - List domain profiles.
- TEST - Test if a domain profile is ready to sign.
- DNSTXT - Generate a matching DNS TXT record.
- IMPORT - Import domain profiles from a file.
- EXPORT - Export domain profiles to a file.
- CLEAR - Clear all domain profiles.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SIGNING - Manage signing profiles.
- VERIFICATION - Manage verification profiles.
DMARC Verification

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- dmarcconfig

**dmarcconfig**

**Description**

Configure DMARC settings.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command supports a batch format.

**Batch Format - DMARC Verification Profiles**

The batch format of the dmarcconfig can be used to create, edit, or delete verification profiles and modify global settings.

[]>

Number of DK/DKIM Signing Profiles: 1
Number of Signing Keys: 1
Number of DKIM Verification Profiles: 1
Sign System-Generated Messages: Yes

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- PROFILES - Manage domain profiles.
- KEYS - Manage signing keys.
- SETUP - Change global settings.
- SEARCH - Search for domain profile or key.

[]>
Add a DMARC Verification Profile

```
dmarcconfig profiles new <name> [options]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;name&gt;</td>
<td>Name of the DMARC profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[options]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--rejectpolicy_action</td>
<td>The message action that AsyncOS must take when the policy in DMARC record is reject. Possible values are “reject”, “quarantine”, or “none.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--rejectpolicy_response_code</td>
<td>The SMTP response code for rejected messages. The default value is 550.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--rejectpolicy_response_text</td>
<td>The SMTP response text for rejected messages. The default value is “#5.7.1 DMARC unauthenticated mail is prohibited.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--rejectpolicy_quarantine</td>
<td>The quarantine for messages that fail DMARC verification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--quarantinepolicy_action</td>
<td>The message action that AsyncOS must take when the policy in DMARC record is quarantine. Possible values are “quarantine” or “none.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--quarantinepolicy_quarantine</td>
<td>The quarantine for messages that fail DMARC verification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--tempfail_action</td>
<td>The message action that AsyncOS must take on the messages that result in temporary failure during DMARC verification. Possible values are “accept” or “reject.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--tempfail_response_code</td>
<td>The SMTP response code for rejected messages in case of temporary failure. The default value is 451.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--tempfail_response_text</td>
<td>The SMTP response text for rejected messages in case of temporary failure. The default value is “#4.7.1 Unable to perform DMARC verification.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--permfail_action</td>
<td>The message action that AsyncOS must take on the messages that result in permanent failure during DMARC verification. Possible values are “accept” or “reject.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--permfail_response_code</td>
<td>The SMTP response code for rejected messages in case of permanent failure. The default value is 550.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--permfail_response_text</td>
<td>The SMTP response text for rejected messages in case of permanent failure. The default value is “#5.7.1 DMARC verification failed.”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Edit a DMARC Verification Profile

```
dmarcconfig profiles edit <name> [options]
```

Delete a DMARC Verification Profile

```
dmarcconfig profiles delete <name>
```

Delete all the DMARC Verification Profiles

```
dmarcconfig profiles clear
```
View the Details of a DMARC Verification Profile

dmarcconfig profiles print <name>

Export DMARC Verification Profiles

dmarcconfig profiles export <filename>

Import DMARC Verification Profiles

dmarcconfig profiles import <filename>

Change Global Settings

dmarcconfig setup [options]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--report_schedule</td>
<td>The time when you want AsyncOS to generate DMARC aggregate reports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--error_reports</td>
<td>Send delivery error reports to the domain owners if the DMARC aggregate report size exceeds 10 MB or the size specified in the RUA tag of DMARC record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--org_name</td>
<td>The entity generating DMARC aggregate reports. This must be a domain name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--contact_info</td>
<td>Additional contact information, for example, details of your organization's customer support, if the domain owners who receive DMARC aggregate reports want to contact the entity that generated the report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--copy_reports</td>
<td>Send copy of all the DMARC aggregate reports to specific users, for example, internal users who perform analysis on the aggregate reports. Enter an email address or multiple addresses separated by commas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--bypass_addresslist</td>
<td>Skip DMARC verification of messages from specific senders (address list).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>You can choose only address lists created with full email addresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--bypass_headers</td>
<td>Skip DMARC verification of messages that contain specific header field names. For example, use this option to skip DMARC verification of messages from mailing lists and trusted forwarders. Enter a header or multiple headers separated by commas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

The following example shows how to setup a DMARC verification profile and edit the global settings of DMARC verification profiles.

mail.example.com> dmarcconfig

Number of DMARC Verification Profiles: 1
Daily report generation time is: 00:00
Error reports enabled: No
Reports sent on behalf of:
Contact details for reports: mathew
Send a copy of aggregate reports to: None Specified
Bypass DMARC verification for senders from addresslist: None Specified
Bypass DMARC verification for messages with header fields: None Specified

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- PROFILES - Manage DMARC verification profiles.
- SETUP - Change global settings.

[>] profiles

There are currently 1 DMARC verification profiles defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new DMARC verification profile.
- EDIT - Modify a DMARC verification profile.
- DELETE - Delete a DMARC verification profile.
- PRINT - Display DMARC verification profiles.
- IMPORT - Import DMARC verification profiles from a file.
- EXPORT - Export DMARC verification profiles to a file.
- CLEAR - Clear all DMARC verification profiles.

[>] new

Enter the name of the new DMARC verification profile:
[>] dmarc_ver_profile_1

Select the message action when the policy in DMARC record is reject:
1. No Action
2. Quarantine the message
3. Reject the message

[3]> 1

Select the message action when the policy in DMARC record is quarantine:
1. No Action
2. Quarantine the message

[2]> 2

Select the quarantine for messages that fail DMARC verification (when the DMARC policy is quarantine).
1. Policy

[1]> 1

What SMTP action should be taken in case of temporary failure?
1. Accept
2. Reject

[1]> 2

Enter the SMTP response code for rejected messages in case of temporary failure.
[451]>

Enter the SMTP response text for rejected messages in case of temporary failure. Type DEFAULT to use the default response text '#4.7.1 Unable to perform DMARC verification.'
[4.7.1 Unable to perform DMARC verification.]

What SMTP action should be taken in case of permanent failure?
1. Accept
2. Reject

[1]> 2

Enter the SMTP response code for rejected messages in case of permanent failure.
[550]>

Enter the SMTP response text for rejected messages in case of permanent failure. Type DEFAULT to use the default response text '#4.7.1 Unable to perform DMARC verification.'
[5.7.1 DMARC verification failed.]>
There are currently 2 DMARC verification profiles defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new DMARC verification profile.
- EDIT - Modify a DMARC verification profile.
- DELETE - Delete a DMARC verification profile.
- PRINT - Display DMARC verification profiles.
- IMPORT - Import DMARC verification profiles from a file.
- EXPORT - Export DMARC verification profiles to a file.
- CLEAR - Clear all DMARC verification profiles.

Number of DMARC Verification Profiles: 2  
Daily report generation time is: 00:00  
Error reports enabled: No  
Reports sent on behalf of:  
Contact details for reports: dmarc.example  
Send a copy of aggregate reports to: None Specified  
Bypass DMARC verification for senders from addresslist: None Specified  
Bypass DMARC verification for messages with header fields: None Specified

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- PROFILES - Manage DMARC verification profiles.
- SETUP - Change global settings.

[]> setup

Would you like to modify DMARC report settings? (Yes/No) [N]> Y

Enter the time of day to generate aggregate feedback reports. Use 24-hour format (HH:MM).  
[00:00]>

Would you like to send DMARC error reports? (Yes/No) [N]> Y

Enter the entity name responsible for report generation. This is added to the DMARC aggregate reports.  
[]> example.com

Enter additional contact information to be added to DMARC aggregate reports. This could be an email address, URL of a website with additional help, a phone number etc.  
[dmarc.example]> http://dmarc.example.com

Would you like to send a copy of all aggregate reports? (Yes/No) [N]>

Would you like to bypass DMARC verification for an addresslist? (Yes/No) [N]>

Would you like to bypass DMARC verification for specific header fields? (Yes/No) [N]>

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- ADD - Add a header field to the verification-bypass list.  
[]> add

Enter the header field name  
[]> List-Unsubscribe

DMARC verification is configured to bypass DMARC verification for messages containing the following header fields.
1. List-Unsubscribe

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- ADD - Add a header field to the verification-bypass list.  
- REMOVE - Remove a header field from the list.  
[]> add
Enter the header field name
][]> List-ID

DMARC verification is configured to bypass DMARC verification for messages containing the following header fields.
1. List-Unsubscribe
2. List-ID

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- ADD - Add a header field to the verification-bypass list.
- REMOVE - Remove a header field from the list.
][]>

Number of DMARC Verification Profiles: 2
Daily report generation time is: 00:00
Error reports enabled: Yes
Reports sent on behalf of: example.com
Contact details for reports: http://dmarc.example.com
Send a copy of aggregate reports to: None Specified
Bypass DMARC verification for senders from addresslist: None Specified
Bypass DMARC verification for messages with header fields: List-Unsubscribe, List-ID

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- PROFILES - Manage DMARC verification profiles.
- SETUP - Change global settings.
][]>

---

**DNS**

This section contains the following CLI commands:
- `dig`
- `dnsconfig`
- `dnsflush`
- `dnslistconfig`
- `dnslistflush`
- `dnslisttest`
- `dnssatus`

**dig**

**Description**

Look up a record on a DNS server

**Usage**

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.
Batch Format

The batch format of the `dig` command can be used to perform all the functions of the traditional CLI command.

- Look up a record on a DNS server

```bash
dig [options] [@<dns_ip>] [qtype] <hostname>
```

- Do a reverse lookup for given IP address on a DNS server

```bash
dig -x <reverse_ip> [options] [@<dns_ip>]
```

These are the options available for the `dig` command’s batch format

- `-s <source_ip>` Specify the source IP address.
- `-t` Make query over TCP.
- `-u` Make query over UDP (default).

```bash
dns_ip - Query the DNS server at this IP address.
qtype - Query type: A, PTR, CNAME, MX, SOA, NS, TXT.
hostname - Record that user want to look up.
reverse_ip - Reverse lookup IP address.
dns_ip - Query the DNS server at this IP address.
```

Example

The following example explicitly specifies a DNS server for the lookup.

```bash
mail.com> dig @111.111.111.111 example.com MX
```

```
; <<< DiG 9.4.3-P2 <<< @111.111.111.111 example.com MX
; (1 server found)
;; global options: printcmd
;; Got answer:
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY, status: NOERROR, id: 18540
```
Note

The `dig` command filters out the information in the Authority and Additional sections if you do not explicitly specify the DNS server when using the command.

**dnsconfig**

**Description**

Configure DNS setup
Usage

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format

The batch format of the `dnsconfig` command can be used to perform all the functions of the traditional CLI command.

- Configuring DNS to use a local nameserver cache:

  ```
  dnsconfig parent new <ns_ip> <priority>
  ```

  **Command arguments:**
  - `<ns_ip>` - The IP address of the nameserver. Separate multiple IP addresses with commas.
  - `<priority>` - The priority for this entry.

- Deleting the local nameserver cache:

  ```
  dnsconfig parent delete <ns_ip>
  ```

- Configuring alternate DNS caches to use for specific domains:

  ```
  dnsconfig alt new <domains> <ns_ip>
  ```

  **Command arguments:**
  - `<domains>` - A comma separated list of domains.
  - `<ns_ip>` - The IP address of the nameserver.

  **Note**

  Cannot be used when using Internet root nameservers.

- Deleting the alternate DNS cache for a specific domain:

  ```
  dnsconfig alt delete <domain>
  ```

- Configuring DNS to use the Internet root nameservers:

  ```
  dnsconfig roots new <ns_domain> <ns_name> <ns_ip>
  ```

  **Nameserver arguments:**
  - `<ns_domain>` - The domain to override.
  - `<ns_name>` - The name of the nameserver.
  - `<ns_ip>` - The IP address of the nameserver.
You can override certain domains by specifying an alternate name server for that domain.

- Deleting nameservers:

  `dnsconfig roots delete <ns_domain> [ns_name]`

- When deleting, if you do not specify an `ns_name`, then all nameservers for that domain will be removed.

- Clearing all DNS settings and automatically configuring the system to use the Internet root servers:

  `dnsconfig roots`

Displaying the current DNS settings.

`dnsconfig print`

**Example**

Each user-specified DNS server requires the following information:

- Hostname
- IP address
- Domain authoritative for (alternate servers only)

Four subcommands are available within the `dnsconfig` command:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>new</code></td>
<td>Add a new alternate DNS server to use for specific domains or local DNS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>delete</code></td>
<td>Remove an alternate server or local DNS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>edit</code></td>
<td>Modify an alternate server or local DNS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>setup</code></td>
<td>Switch between Internet root DNS servers or local DNS servers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Currently using the Internet root DNS servers.

Alternate authoritative DNS servers:
1. com: dns.example.com (10.1.10.9)

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new server.
- EDIT - Edit a server.
- DELETE - Remove a server.
- SETUP - Configure general settings.

[]> setup

Do you want the Gateway to use the Internet’s root DNS servers or would you like it to use your own DNS servers?

1. Use Internet root DNS servers
2. Use own DNS cache servers

[1]> 1

Choose the IP interface for DNS traffic.

1. Auto
2. Management (10.92.149.70/24: mail3.example.com)

[1]>

Enter the number of seconds to wait before timing out reverse DNS lookups.

[20]>

Enter the minimum TTL in seconds for DNS cache.

[1800]>

Currently using the Internet root DNS servers.
Alternate authoritative DNS servers:

1. com: dns.example.com (10.1.10.9)

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new server.
- EDIT - Edit a server.
- DELETE - Remove a server.
- SETUP - Configure general settings.

Adding an Alternate DNS Server for Specific Domains

You can configure the appliance to use the Internet root servers for all DNS queries except specific local domains.

Table 3-31  dnsconfig - Adding Alternate DNS Servers

mail3.example.com> dnsconfig

Currently using the Internet root DNS servers.

No alternate authoritative servers configured.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new server.
- SETUP - Configure general settings.

[]> new

Please enter the domain this server is authoritative for. (Ex: "com").

[]> example.com
You can configure the appliance to use your own DNS cache server.

**Using Your Own DNS Cache Servers**

You can configure the appliance to use your own DNS cache server.
Alternate authoritative DNS servers:

1. com: dns.example.com (10.1.10.9)

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new server.
- EDIT - Edit a server.
- DELETE - Remove a server.
- SETUP - Configure general settings.

[1]> setup

Do you want the Gateway to use the Internet's root DNS servers or would you like it to use your own DNS servers?

1. Use Internet root DNS servers
2. Use own DNS cache servers

[1]> 2

Please enter the IP address of your DNS server.
Separate multiple IPs with commas.

[1]> 10.10.200.03

Please enter the priority for 10.10.200.3.
A value of 0 has the highest priority.
The IP will be chosen at random if they have the same priority.

[0]> 1

Choose the IP interface for DNS traffic.

1. Auto
dnsflush

Description

Clear all entries from the DNS cache.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

Table 3-32  *dnsconfig* - Using your own DNS cache servers  (Continued)

2. Management (192.168.42.42/24)

3. PrivateNet (192.168.1.1/24: mail3.example.com)

4. PublicNet (192.168.2.1/24: mail3.example.com)

[1]> 1

Enter the number of seconds to wait before timing out reverse DNS lookups.

[20]>  

Enter the minimum TTL in seconds for DNS cache.

[1800]>  

Currently using the local DNS cache servers:

1. Priority: 1  10.10.200.3

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new server.
- EDIT - Edit a server.
- DELETE - Remove a server.
- SETUP - Configure general settings.

[]>
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format

Example

Table 3-33   dnsflush

mail3.example.com> dnsflush

Are you sure you want to clear out the DNS cache? [N]> Y

dnslistconfig

Description

Configure DNS List services support

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format
Example

Table 3-34  dnslistconfig

mail3.example.com> dnslistconfig

Current DNS List Settings:
Negative Response TTL: 1800 seconds
DNS List Query Timeout: 3 seconds

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Configure general settings.

[>] setup

Enter the cache TTL for negative responses in seconds:
[1800]> 1200

Enter the query timeout in seconds:
[3]> 

Settings updated.

Current DNS List Settings:
Negative Response TTL: 1200 seconds
DNS List Query Timeout: 3 seconds

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Configure general settings.

[>] 

mail3.example.com>
**dnslistflush**

**Description**

Flush the current DNS List cache.

**Usage**

**Commit**: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management**: This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format

**Example**

```
Table 3-35  dnslistflush

mail3.example.com> dnslistflush

Are you sure you want to clear out the DNS List cache? [N]> y

DNS List cache has been cleared.

mail3.example.com>
```

**dnslisttest**

**Description**

Test a DNS lookup for a DNS-based list service.

**Usage**

**Commit**: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management**: This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format
Example

Table 3-36  

dnslisttest

mail3.example.com> dnslisttest

Enter the query server name:
[]> mail4.example.com

Enter the test IP address to query for:
[127.0.0.2]> 10.10.1.11

Querying: 10.10.1.11.mail4.example.com

Result: MATCHED

mail3.example.com>

dnsstatus

Description

Display DNS statistics.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-37  \textit{dnsstatus}

\texttt{mail3.example.com}> \texttt{dnsstatus}

Status as of: Mon Apr 18 10:58:07 2005 PDT

\begin{tabular}{|l|c|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Counters:} & \textbf{Reset} & \textbf{Uptime} & \textbf{Lifetime} \\
\hline
\text{DNS Requests} & 1,115 & 1,115 & 1,115 \\
\text{Network Requests} & 186 & 186 & 186 \\
\text{Cache Hits} & 1,300 & 1,300 & 1,300 \\
\text{Cache Misses} & 1 & 1 & 1 \\
\text{Cache Exceptions} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\text{Cache Expired} & 185 & 185 & 185 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\texttt{mail3.example.com>}

General Management/Administration/Troubleshooting

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- \texttt{addressconfig}
- \texttt{adminaccessconfig}
- \texttt{certconfig}
- \texttt{diagnostic}
- \texttt{ecconfig}
- \texttt{ecstatus}
- \texttt{ecupdate}
- \texttt{encryptionconfig}
- \texttt{encryptionstatus}
- \texttt{encryptionupdate}
- \texttt{featurekey}
- \texttt{featurekeyconfig}
- \texttt{ntpconfig}
- \texttt{reboot}
addressconfig

Description

The addressconfig command is used to configure the From: Address header. You can specify the display, user, and domain names of the From: address. You can also choose to use the Virtual Gateway domain for the domain name. Use the addressconfig command for mail generated by AsyncOS for the following circumstances:

- Anti-virus notifications
- Bounces
- DMARC feedback reports
- Notifications (notify() and notify-copy() filter actions)
- Quarantine Messages (and “Send Copy” in quarantine management)
- Reports
- All other messages
In the following example, the From: Address for notifications is changed from: Mail Delivery System [MAILER-DAEMON@domain] (the default) to Notifications [Notification@example.com]

Usage

**Commit**: This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-38  addressconfig

mail3.example.com> addressconfig

Current anti-virus from: "Mail Delivery System" <MAILER-DAEMON@domain>
Current bounce from: "Mail Delivery System" <MAILER-DAEMON@domain>
Current notify from: "Mail Delivery System" <MAILER-DAEMON@domain>
Current quarantine from: "Mail Delivery System" <MAILER-DAEMON@domain>
Current DMARC reports from: "DMARC Feedback" <MAILER-DAEMON@domain>
Current all other messages from: "Mail Delivery System" <MAILER-DAEMON@domain>

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- AVFROM - Edit the anti-virus from address.
- BOUNCEFROM - Edit the bounce from address.
- NOTIFYFROM - Edit the notify from address.
- QUARANTINEFROM - Edit the quarantine bcc from address.
- DMARCFROM - Edit the DMARC reports from address.
- OTHERFROM - Edit the all other messages from address.

[.]> notifyfrom

Please enter the display name portion of the "notify from" address

["Mail Delivery System"]> Notifications

Please enter the user name portion of the "notify from" address

[MAILER-DAEMON]> Notification

Do you want the virtual gateway domain used for the domain? [Y]> n

Please enter the domain name portion of the "notify from" address
adminaccessconfig

Description

Configure network access list and banner login.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format

The batch format of the adminaccessconfig command can be used to perform all the functions of the traditional CLI command.
• Select whether to allow access for all IP addresses or limit access to specific IP address/subnet/range
  ```
  adminaccessconfig ipaccess <all/restrict>
  ```

• Adding a new IP address/subnet/range
  ```
  adminaccessconfig ipaccess new <address>
  ```

• Editing an existing IP address/subnet/range
  ```
  adminaccessconfig ipaccess edit <oldaddress> <newaddress>
  ```

• Deleting an existing IP address/subnet/range
  ```
  adminaccessconfig ipaccess delete <address>
  ```

• Printing a list of the IP addresses/subnets/ranges
  ```
  adminaccessconfig ipaccess print
  ```

• Deleting all existing IP addresses/subnets/ranges
  ```
  adminaccessconfig ipaccess clear
  ```

• Printing the login banner
  ```
  adminaccessconfig banner print
  ```

• Importing a login banner from a file on the appliance
  ```
  adminaccessconfig banner import <filename>
  ```

• Deleting an existing login banner
  ```
  adminaccessconfig banner clear
  ```

**Example - Configuring Network Access List**

You can control from which IP addresses users access the Email Security appliance. Users can access the appliance from any machine with an IP address from the access list you define. When creating the network access list, you can specify IP addresses, subnets, or CIDR addresses.

AsyncOS displays a warning if you do not include the IP address of your current machine in the network access list. If your current machine’s IP address is not in the list, it will not be able to access the appliance after you commit your changes.
In the following example, network access to the appliance is restricted to three sets of IP addresses:

**Table 3-39  adminaccessconfig - Network Access List**

mail3.example.com> adminaccessconfig

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- BANNER - Configure login message (banner) for appliance administrator login.
- IPACCESS - Configure IP-based access for appliance administrative interface.

[]> ipaccess

Current mode: Allow All.

Please select the mode:

- ALL - All IP addresses will be allowed to access the administrative interface.
- RESTRICT - Specify IP addresses/Subnets/Ranges to be allowed access.

[]> restrict

List of allowed IP addresses/Subnets/Ranges:

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new IP address/subnet/range.

[]> new

Please enter IP address, subnet or range.

[]> 192.168.1.2-100
**Table 3-39**  
*adminaccessconfig* - Network Access List

List of allowed IP addresses/Subnets/Ranges:

1. 192.168.1.2-100

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- **NEW** - Add a new IP address/subnet/range.
- **EDIT** - Modify an existing entry.
- **DELETE** - Remove an existing entry.
- **CLEAR** - Remove all the entries.

[]> new

Please enter IP address, subnet or range.

[]> 192.168.255.12

List of allowed IP addresses/Subnets/Ranges:

1. 192.168.1.2-100
2. 192.168.255.12

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- **NEW** - Add a new IP address/subnet/range.
- **EDIT** - Modify an existing entry.
- **DELETE** - Remove an existing entry.
- **CLEAR** - Remove all the entries.

[]> new

Please enter IP address, subnet or range.
Table 3-39  
adminaccessconfig - Network Access List

[>] 192.168.2.2

List of allowed IP addresses/Subnets/Ranges:

1. 192.168.1.2-100
2. 192.168.255.12
3. 192.168.2.2

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Add a new IP address/subnet/range.
- EDIT - Modify an existing entry.
- DELETE - Remove an existing entry.
- CLEAR - Remove all the entries.

[>]

Warning: The host you are currently using [192.168.8.126] is not included in the User Access list. Excluding it will prevent your host from connecting to the administrative interface. Are you sure you want to continue? [N]> n

List of allowed IP addresses/Subnets/Ranges:

1. 192.168.1.2-100
2. 192.168.255.12
3. 192.168.2.2

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Add a new IP address/subnet/range.
- EDIT - Modify an existing entry.
Table 3-39  adminaccessconfig - Network Access List

- DELETE - Remove an existing entry.
- CLEAR - Remove all the entries.

[]> new

Please enter IP address, subnet or range.

[]> 192.168.8.126

List of allowed IP addresses/Subnets/Ranges:

1. 192.168.1.2-100
2. 192.168.255.12
3. 192.168.2.2
4. 192.168.8.126

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new IP address/subnet/range.
- EDIT - Modify an existing entry.
- DELETE - Remove an existing entry.
- CLEAR - Remove all the entries.

[]>

Current mode: Restrict.

Please select the mode:

- ALL - All IP addresses will be allowed to access the administrative interface.
- RESTRICT - Specify IP addresses/Subnets/Ranges to be allowed access.

[]>
Example - Configuring Network Access List

You can configure the Email Security appliance to display a message called a “login banner” when a user attempts to log into the appliance through SSH, Telnet, FTP, or Web UI. The login banner is customizable text that appears above the login prompt in the CLI and to the right of the login prompt in the GUI. You can use the login banner to display internal security information or best practice instructions for the appliance. For example, you can create a simple note that saying that unauthorized use of the appliance is prohibited or a detailed warning concerning the organization’s right to review changes made by the user to the appliance.

The maximum length of the login banner is 2000 characters to fit 80x25 consoles. A login banner can be imported from a file in the /data/pub/configuration directory on the appliance. After creating the banner, commit your changes.

In the following example, the login banner “Use of this system in an unauthorized manner is prohibited” is added to the appliance:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-40</th>
<th>adminaccessconfig - Banner List</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- BANNER - Configure login message(banner) for appliance administrator login.
- IPACCESS - Configure IP-based access for appliance administrative interface.

[]> banner

A banner has not been defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a banner to display at login.
- IMPORT - Import banner text from a file.

[]> new

Enter or paste the banner text here. Enter CTRL-D on a blank line to end.

Use of this system in an unauthorized manner is prohibited.

^D

Banner: Use of this system in an unauthorized manner is prohibited.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
certconfig

Description

Configure security certificates and keys.

Usage

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

Example - Pasting in a certificate

In the following example, a certificate is installed by pasting in the certificate and private key.

```
mail3.example.com> certconfig
```

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **CERTIFICATE** - Import, Create a request, Edit or Remove Certificate Profiles
- **CERTAUTHORITY** - Manage System and Customized Authorities

```
[]> certificate
```

List of Certificates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Issued By</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Remaining</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Demo</td>
<td>Cisco Appliance Demo</td>
<td>Cisco Appliance Demo</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>3467 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Choose the operation you want to perform:
- IMPORT - Import a certificate from a local PKCS#12 file
- PASTE - Paste a certificate into the CLI
- NEW - Create a self-signed certificate and CSR
- PRINT - View certificates assigned to services

{[paste

Enter a name for this certificate profile:

> partner.com

Paste public certificate in PEM format (end with '.'): 

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIICLDCCAYCAwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEEBQAwgAAMCzAJBgLVBAYTA1BUMRnEQYD
VQQIEwpoRDV1hbnNaY5MQ8wDQYDVQQLHEw2MaXNi6e2ExFzAVBGwNVBAoTdk51dXJv
bmlvLCBMZGEuMRgwFgYDQVQLEw9EZXN1bnZvHZpJVWudG8GzAZBgNVBAMTEmJy
dXR1cy5uZXVyb25pby5wDEbMBkGCSqGSIb3DQEJARYMc2FtcG9AAwWpLmZpMB4X
D9k2NDc2WNTzNDIO2EXD7k2MTAwNTazNDIOM1owgaAAMCzAJBgLVBAYTA1UMRn
EQYDQVQLEwpRDV1hbnNaY5MQ8wDQYDVQQLHEw2MaXNi6e2ExFzAVBGwNVBAoTdk51
dXR1vLCBMZGEuMRgwFgYDQVQLEw9EZXN1bnZvHZpJVWudG8GzAZBgNVBAMT
EmJyD9k2NDc2WNTzNDIO2EXD7k2MTAwNTazNDIOM1owgaAAMCzAJBgLVBAYTA1UMRn
MFwvDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADSwAwSAJBAJ7+a+ylSjIA/+/9yGjxv4q1MUTd1k+jNw
L41YKbpzilCM5ebaQXeQ2RmGNTUX+mDVuqItjVHOK3DvPK71TCsSfUTCwEAATAN
BgqkhkGw90BAQFQAANBAFgPEFKj6TSCKTHvaQeEAsXO/8YHPH3qr/9AhSjrwuX
9Ebc0n6bVQhN7XaD6s7dy9ms9bWtcb+pJdurnxjx4=
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
.

C=PT,ST=Queensland,L=Lisboa,O=Neuronio,
Lda.,OU=Desenvolvimento,CN=brutus.partner.com,emailAddress=admin@example.com
Table 3-41  
certconfig - Pasting in a certificate

Paste private key in PEM format (end with '.'):  

-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
MIIBPAIBAAJBAL7+aty3Sl1BA/+yxjxv4q1MUTd1kjNwL4LYKbpzZlmc5beaQXeQ
2RmGMTXu+eDvuqItjVHOK3DvPK71TcSGfTuCAwEAAQJBALjK+jc2+iihI98riEF
oudmkNziSRTYjnvjx8mCoAjPWviB3c742e03FG4/soiijD9A5alihBOxUzloenr
8IECIQD3H5+0l+68BA/6d76iUNqAAV8djGTzvxnCxynxPQydQiHAXMk4trUI3nc
a+U8YL2HFFA3gmlBsSICbq2OptOCnM7baiEA6xi3JlQECob8YwkRj29DvU3/4WYD7
WLPgsQpwo1GuSpECICGsnWH5oaeD9t9jbFosfHjVv0IzmxdcLpRcps1peWBBAiEA
6/5B8J0GHdJq89FHwEG/H2eVVUYy5y/ad6sgcm+0Avg=
-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----

Do you want to add an intermediate certificate? [N]> n

List of Certificates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Issued By</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Remaining</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>partner.c brutus.partner.com</td>
<td>brutus.partner.com</td>
<td>brutus.partner.com</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>30 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demo</td>
<td>Cisco Appliance Demo</td>
<td>Cisco Appliance Demo</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>3467 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- IMPORT - Import a certificate from a local PKCS#12 file
- PASTE - Paste a certificate into the CLI
- NEW - Create a self-signed certificate and CSR
- EDIT - Update certificate or view the signing request
- EXPORT - Export a certificate
Example - Creating a self-signed certificate

In the following example, a self-signed certificate is created.

### Table 3-41  certconfig - Pasting in a certificate

- DELETE - Remove a certificate
- PRINT - View certificates assigned to services

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- CERTIFICATE - Import, Create a request, Edit or Remove Certificate Profiles
- CERTAUTHORITY - Manage System and Customized Authorities

```
esx16-esa01.qa> commit
Please enter some comments describing your changes:
[]> Installed certificate and key for receiving, delivery, and https
```

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT

### Table 3-42  certconfig - Creating a self-signed certificate

```
mail3.example.com> certconfig
```

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- CERTIFICATE - Import, Create a request, Edit or Remove Certificate Profiles
- CERTAUTHORITY - Manage System and Customized Authorities

```
[]> certificate
```

List of Certificates
Choose the operation you want to perform:

- IMPORT - Import a certificate from a local PKCS#12 file
- PASTE - Paste a certificate into the CLI
- NEW - Create a self-signed certificate and CSR
- EDIT - Update certificate or view the signing request
- EXPORT - Export a certificate
- DELETE - Remove a certificate
- PRINT - View certificates assigned to services

[> new

Enter a name for this certificate profile:

> example.com

Enter Common Name:

> example.com

Enter Organization:

> Example

Enter Organizational Unit:

> Org
Table 3-42  

certconfig - Creating a self-signed certificate

Enter Locality or City:
> San Francisco

Enter State or Province:
> CA

Enter Country (2 letter code):
> US

Duration before expiration (in days):
[3650]>

1. 1024
2. 2048

Enter size of private key:
[2]>

Do you want to view the CSR? [Y] y

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIICrTCCAZUCAQAwaDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxFDASBgNVBAMTC2V4YW1wbGwGCSqG
S0w0DQQHMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAAMB2AGECBQMaSMSRbXYHuqQ4cWqNio+OznP+R
4k/kf/H+G608V6pR+7c9mK5z/TyC4uXADedP4ot66B6hBZ3gX0aCj0j1zJc0v26w
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
Table 3-42  
\textit{certconfig} - Creating a self-signed certificate

\begin{verbatim}
kdWcfaDLF9tnQJPWSYoCh0USgCce8QIDAQAB0oAAwDQYJKoZIHvcNAQE4FBQADggEB
AGiVhyHA2uHSv9yA08kJCmrgO89yrL1nDUXDdo6IrGDVKx4hHTi0anOPu1nsThSVH
7xV4xR35T/QV0U3yPrL6bJbwMySOLIRTjsUcwZNj0E1xMSEkBM2BOI5rs4159g
FhHVehjGIlyyUDL0U82wsSLMqLPFH1IT63tzWmRiIXmAu/1Hyci3+vctb+sopnNi
1Y0Iuj+Ecg8NzRBNnKXLtDXkzhELOd8vZEqSAbWjyjZ2mECzC7sG3evqkw/OGLk
A1lNXhayiGjeY+UfWzf/HBSekJTQu6hIV6jPSY/MnYU4t1ExqD+GX31ru4xc4
zDas2rS/Pbpn73Lf503nmsw=
\end{verbatim}

-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----

List of Certificates

\begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|l|}
\hline
Name & Common Name & Issued By & Status & Remaining \\
\hline
example.c & example.com & example.com & Valid & 3649 days \\
partner.c & brutus.partner.com & brutus.partner.com & Valid & 30 days \\
Demo & Cisco Appliance Demo & Cisco Appliance Demo & Active & 3467 days \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- \textbf{IMPORT} - Import a certificate from a local PKCS#12 file
- \textbf{PASTE} - Paste a certificate into the CLI
- \textbf{NEW} - Create a self-signed certificate and CSR
- \textbf{EDIT} - Update certificate or view the signing request
- \textbf{EXPORT} - Export a certificate
- \textbf{DELETE} - Remove a certificate
- \textbf{PRINT} - View certificates assigned to services

[]>
**diagnostic**

**Description**

The diagnostic command is used to check RAID disks, view and clear cache information, and to test connectivity to other mail servers.

**Using the diagnostic Command**

The following commands are available within the `diagnostic` submenu:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Table 3-43 diagnostic Subcommands</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Option</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NETWORK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto). This command requires access to the local file system.

**Batch Command:** This command supports a batch format.

**Batch Format**

The batch format of the diagnostic command can be used to check RAID status, clear caches and show the contents of the ARP cache. To invoke as a batch command, use the following formats:

- Check the RAID status

  `diagnostic raid`

- Clear the LDAP, DNS and ARP caches

  `diagnostic network flush`
- Display the ARP cache:

```
diagnostic network arpshow
```

**Example: Displaying and Clearing Caches**

The following example shows the diagnostic command used to display the contents of the ARP cache and to flush all network related caches.

```
 mail3.example.com> diagnostic

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- RAID - Disk Verify Utility.
- NETWORK - Network Utilities.

[>] network

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- FLUSH - Flush all network related caches.
- ARPSHOW - Show system ARP cache.
- SMTPPING - Test a remote SMTP server.

[>] arpshow

System ARP cache contents:

```
(163.17.0.1) at 00:02:b1:cf:10:11 on fxp0 [ethernet]
```

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- FLUSH - Flush all network related caches.
- ARPSHOW - Show system ARP cache.
- SMTPPING - Test a remote SMTP server.

[>] flush
Example: Verify Connectivity to Another Mail Server

The following example shows diagnostics used to check connectivity to another mail server. You can test the mail server by sending a message or pinging the server.

Table 3-45  diagnostic: SMTPPING

mail3.example.com> diagnostic

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- RAID - Disk Verify Utility.
- NETWORK - Network Utilities.

[?] > network

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- FLUSH - Flush all network related caches.
- ARPSHOW - Show system ARP cache.
- SMTPPING - Test a remote SMTP server.

[?] > smtpping

Enter the hostname or IP address of the SMTP server:

[mail3.example.com]> mail.com

The domain you entered has MX records.

Would you like to select an MX host to test instead? [Y]>y

Select an MX host to test.
ecconfig

Set or clear the enrollment client that is used to obtain certificates for use with the URL Filtering feature. Do not use this command without guidance from Cisco support. Entries must be in the format `<hostname:port>` or `<IPv4 address:port>`. Port is optional. To specify the default server, enter `ecconfig server default`.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
**Cluster Management:** This command can be used at all levels in a cluster.

**Batch Command:** This command supports a batch format.

**Batch Format**

- To specify a non-default enrollment client server:
  
  > ecconfig server <server_name:port>

To use the default enrollment client server:

> ecconfig server default

**Example**

```bash
> ecconfig

Enrollment Server: Not Configured (Use Default)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Configure the Enrollment Server
[>] setup

Do you want to use non-default Enrollment server?
WARNING: Do not configure this option without the assistance of Cisco Support.
Incorrect configuration can impact the services using certificates from the
Enrollment server.
[N]> y
Enter a new Enrollment server:
[192.0.2.1]>
```

**ecstatus**

Display the current version of the enrollment client that is used to automatically obtain certificates for use with the URL Filtering feature.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

```bash
> ecstatus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Last Updated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment client</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>Never updated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
**ecupdate**

Manually update the enrollment client that is used to automatically obtain certificates for use with the URL Filtering feature. Normally, these updates occur automatically. Do not use this command without guidance from Cisco support.

If you use the `force` parameter (`ecupdate [force]`) the client is updated even if no changes are detected.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command supports a batch format.

**Batch Format**

```plaintext
> ecupdate [force]
```

**Example**

```plaintext
> ecupdate
Requesting update of Enrollment Client.
```

**encryptionconfig**

Configure email encryption.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format

**Example**

The following example shows modifications to an encryption profile:

**Table 3-46** encryptionconfig

```plaintext
example.com> encryptionconfig
IronPort Email Encryption: Enabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Enable/Disable IronPort Email Encryption
```
Table 3-46  encryptionconfig

- PROFILES - Configure email encryption profiles
- PROVISION - Provision with the Cisco Registered Envelope Service

[]> setup

PXE Email Encryption: Enabled

Would you like to use PXE Email Encryption? [Y]> y

WARNING: Increasing the default maximum message size(10MB) may result in decreased performance. See the documentation for size recommendations based on your environment.

Maximum message size for encryption: (Add a trailing K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or no letters for bytes.)
[9]>5

Enter the email address of the encryption account administrator> administrator@example.com

IronPort Email Encryption: Enabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Enable/Disable IronPort Email Encryption
- PROFILES - Configure email encryption profiles
- PROVISION - Provision with the Cisco Registered Envelope Service

[]> profiles

Proxy: Not Configured

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile Name</th>
<th>Key Service</th>
<th>Proxied</th>
<th>Provision Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HIPAA</td>
<td>Hosted Service</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Not Provisioned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new encryption profile
- EDIT - Edit an existing encryption profile
- DELETE - Delete an encryption profile
- PRINT - Print all configuration profiles
- CLEAR - Clear all configuration profiles
- PROXY - Configure a key server proxy

[>] edit

1. HIPAA

Select the profile you wish to edit:

[1]> 1

Profile name: HIPAA
External URL: https://res.cisco.com
Encryption algorithm: ARC4
Payload Transport URL: http://res.cisco.com
Envelope Security: High Security
Return receipts enabled: Yes
Secure Forward enabled: No
Secure Reply All enabled: No
Suppress Applet: No
URL associated with logo image: <undefined>
Encryption queue timeout: 14400
Failure notification subject: [ENCRYPTION FAILURE]
Failure notification template: System Generated
Filename for the envelope: securedoc_${date}T${time}.html
Use Localized Envelope: Yes

Choose the operation you want to perform:
Table 3-46  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NAME</td>
<td>Change profile name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTERNAL</td>
<td>Change external URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALGORITHM</td>
<td>Change encryption algorithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAYLOAD</td>
<td>Change the payload transport URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECURITY</td>
<td>Change envelope security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECEIPT</td>
<td>Change return receipt handling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORWARD</td>
<td>Change &quot;Secure Forward&quot; setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPLYALL</td>
<td>Change &quot;Secure Reply All&quot; setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCALIZED_ENVELOPE</td>
<td>Enable or disable display of envelopes in languages other than English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPLET</td>
<td>Change applet suppression setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL</td>
<td>Change URL associated with logo image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMEOUT</td>
<td>Change maximum time message waits in encryption queue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOUNCE_SUBJECT</td>
<td>Change failure notification subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILENAME</td>
<td>Change the file name of the envelope attached to the encryption notification.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3-46  encryptionconfig

sensitivity

1. Medium (password required to open envelopes, but credentials may be cached)
2. High (password required and passphrase enabled, and credentials may not be cached)
3. No Password Required (The recipient does not need a password to open the encrypted message.)

Please enter the envelope sensitivity level:

1

Profile name: HIPAA  
External URL: https://res.cisco.com  
Encryption algorithm: ARC4  
Payload Transport URL: http://res.cisco.com  
Envelope Security: High Security  
Return receipts enabled: Yes  
Secure Forward enabled: No  
Secure Reply All enabled: No  
Suppress Applet: No  
URL associated with logo image: <undefined>  
Encryption queue timeout: 14400  
Failure notification subject: [ENCRYPTION FAILURE]  
Failure notification template: System Generated  
Filename for the envelope: securedoc_${date}T${time}.html  
Use Localized Envelope: Yes

Choose the operation you want to perform:
Table 3-46  encryptionconfig

- NAME - Change profile name
- EXTERNAL - Change external URL
- ALGORITHM - Change encryption algorithm
- PAYLOAD - Change the payload transport URL
- SECURITY - Change envelope security
- RECEIPT - Change return receipt handling
- FORWARD - Change 'Secure Forward' setting
- REPLYALL - Change 'Secure Reply All' setting
- LOCALIZED_ENVELOPE - Enable or disable display of envelopes in languages other than English
- APPLET - Change applet suppression setting
- URL - Change URL associated with logo image
- TIMEOUT - Change maximum time message waits in encryption queue
- BOUNCE_SUBJECT - Change failure notification subject
- FILENAME - Change the file name of the envelope attached to the encryption notification.

Would you like to enable 'Secure Forward'? [N]> y

Profile name: HIPAA
External URL: https://res.cisco.com
Encryption algorithm: ARC4
Payload Transport URL: http://res.cisco.com
Envelope Security: High Security
Return receipts enabled: Yes
Secure Forward enabled: No
Secure Reply All enabled: No
Suppress Applet: No
URL associated with logo image: <undefined>
Encryption queue timeout: 14400
Failure notification subject: [ENCRYPTION FAILURE]
Failure notification template: System Generated
Filename for the envelope: securedoc_${date}T${time}.html
Use Localized Envelope: Yes

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NAME - Change profile name
- EXTERNAL - Change external URL
- ALGORITHM - Change encryption algorithm
- PAYLOAD - Change the payload transport URL
- SECURITY - Change envelope security
- RECEIPT - Change return receipt handling
- FORWARD - Change 'Secure Forward' setting
- REPLYALL - Change 'Secure Reply All' setting
- LOCALIZED_ENVELOPE - Enable or disable display of envelopes in languages other than English
- APPLET - Change applet suppression setting
- URL - Change URL associated with logo image
- TIMEOUT - Change maximum time message waits in encryption queue
- BOUNCE_SUBJECT - Change failure notification subject
- FILENAME - Change the file name of the envelope attached to the encryption notification.

[]>
**encryptionstatus**

**Description**

The `encryptionstatus` command shows the version of the PXE Engine and Domain Mappings file on the Email Security appliance, as well as the date and time the components were last updated.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

```
mail3.example.com> encryptionstatus
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Last Updated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PXE Engine</td>
<td>6.7.1</td>
<td>17 Nov 2009 00:09 (GMT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain Mappings File</td>
<td>1.0.0</td>
<td>Never updated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**encryptionupdate**

**Description**

The `encryptionupdate` command requests an update to the PXE Engine on the Email Security appliance.
Usage

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

Example

**Table 3-48 encryptionupdate**

```
mail3.example.com> encryptionupdate
```

Requesting update of PXE Engine.

**featurekey**

**Description**

The `featurekey` command lists all functionality enabled by keys on the system and information related to the keys. It also allows you to activate features using a key or check for new feature keys.

For virtual appliances, see also `loadlicense` and `showlicense`.

Usage

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

Example

In this example, the `featurekey` command is used to check for new feature keys.

**Table 3-49**

```
mail3.example.com> featurekey
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Remaining</th>
<th>Expiration Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outbreak Filters</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>28 days</td>
<td>Tue Feb 25 06:40:53 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IronPort Anti-Spam</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Dormant</td>
<td>30 days</td>
<td>Wed Feb 26 07:56:57 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sophos Anti-Virus</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>26 days</td>
<td>Sun Feb 23 02:27:48 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounce Verification</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Dormant</td>
<td>30 days</td>
<td>Wed Feb 26 07:56:57 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming Mail Handling</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>20 days</td>
<td>Sun Feb 16 08:55:58 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IronPort Email Encryption</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Dormant</td>
<td>30 days</td>
<td>Wed Feb 26 07:56:57 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSA Email Data Loss Prevention</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>25 days</td>
<td>Fri Feb 21 10:07:10 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McAfee</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Dormant</td>
<td>30 days</td>
<td>Wed Feb 26 07:56:57 2014</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The **featurekeyconfig** command allows you to configure the machine to automatically download available keys and update the keys on the machine.

### Usage

**Commit:** This command requires a 'commit'.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

### Example

In this example, the **featurekeyconfig** command is used to enable the autoactivate and autocheck features.

#### Table 3-50 featurekeyconfig

```
mail3.example.com> featurekeyconfig
```

Automatic activation of downloaded keys: Disabled

Automatic periodic checking for new feature keys: Disabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Edit feature key configuration.

```
[|]> setup
```

Automatic activation of downloaded keys: Disabled

Automatic periodic checking for new feature keys: Disabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
ntpconfig

Description

The `ntpconfig` command configures AsyncOS to use Network Time Protocol (NTP) to synchronize the system clock with other computers. NTP can be turned off using the `settime` command.

Usage

**Commit:** This command requires ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-51  ntpconfig

mail3.example.com> ntpconfig

Currently configured NTP servers:
1. time.ironport.com

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Add a server.
- DELETE - Remove a server.
- SOURCEINT - Set the interface from whose IP address NTP queries should originate.

[]> new

Please enter the fully qualified hostname or IP address of your NTP server.

[]> ntp.example.com

Currently configured NTP servers:
1. time.ironport.com
2. bitsy.mit.edu

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Add a server.
- DELETE - Remove a server.
- SOURCEINT - Set the interface from whose IP address NTP queries should originate.

[]> sourceint
When initiating a connection to an NTP server, the outbound IP address used is chosen automatically. If you want to choose a specific outbound IP address, please select its interface name now.

1. Auto
2. Management (172.19.0.11/24: elroy.run)

[1]> 1

Currently configured NTP servers:
1. time.ironport.com
2. bitsy.mit.edi

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Add a server.
- DELETE - Remove a server.
- SOURCEINT - Set the interface from whose IP address NTP queries should originate.

[[]>

mail3.example.com> commit

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

[[]> Added new NTP server

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT
reboot

Description
Restart the appliance.

Usage
Commit: This command does not require a 'commit'.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

Table 3-52 reboot

mail3.example.com> reboot

Enter the number of seconds to wait before abruptly closing connections.
[30]>
Waiting for listeners to exit...
Receiving suspended.
Waiting for outgoing deliveries to finish...
Mail delivery suspended.

remotepower

Description
Configure the ability to remotely reset power to the appliance chassis using a third-party Intelligent Platform Management Interface (IPMI) tool that supports version 2.0. The following IPMI commands are supported: status, on, off, cycle, reset, diag, soft.

This command runs only on the following hardware: C380 and C680, M380 and M680, and S380 and S680.

You will need a dedicated IPv4 address for the Remote Power Management interface. This interface is configurable only via the remotepower command; it cannot be configured using the ipconfig command.

The username and password that you specify with this command will be required in order to remotely reset appliance power.
Ensure that the dedicated Remote Power Management port is cabled directly to a secure network. For information, see the Hardware Installation Guide. Verify that any required ports through the firewall are open and that the appliance can be accessed remotely.

Usage

**Commit**: This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management**: This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

esa01> remotepower

Current remote power settings:
Access to IPMI remote power commands currently disabled.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
  - SETUP - Configure IPMI for chassis remote power access.

[>] setup

Do you want to enable remote access to chassis power commands?
[N]> y

Please enter the IP address (IPv4 only) for the chassis.
[>] 192.0.2.254

Please enter the netmask.
[>] 255.255.255.0

Please enter the gateway address.
[>] 192.0.2.1

Please enter the user name that will be used to log in to the chassis.
[>] user1

Please enter the password.
>
Please enter the password again to confirm.
>
Current remote power settings:
Access to IPMI remote power commands enabled.
IP Address: 192.0.2.254
Netmask: 255.255.255.0
Gateway: 192.0.2.1
User name: user1

**repengstatus**

Description

Request version information of Reputation Engine.
Usage

**Commit**: This command does not require a 'commit'.

**Cluster Management**: This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

(Machine mail.example.com) > repengstatus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Last Update</th>
<th>Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reputation Engine</td>
<td>28 Jan 2014 23:47 (GMT +00:00)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reputation Engine Tools</td>
<td>28 Jan 2014 23:47 (GMT +00:00)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

resume

**Description**

Resume receiving and deliveries

Usage

**Commit**: This command does not require a 'commit'.

**Cluster Management**: This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

**Table 3-53**  __resume__

mail3.example.com> resume

Receiving resumed for Listener 1.

Mail delivery resumed.

Mail delivery for individually suspended domains must be resumed individually.

resumedel

**Description**

Resume deliveries.
Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

Table 3-54 resumedel

vm10esa0031.qa> resumedel

Currently suspended domains:
1. domain1.com 
2. domain2.com 
3. domain3.com

Enter one or more domains [comma-separated] to which you want to resume delivery.
[ALL]> domain1.com, domain2.com

Mail delivery resumed.

resumelistener

Description

Resume receiving on a listener.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-55  resumelistener

mail3.example.com> resumelistener

Choose the listener(s) you wish to resume.
Separate multiple entries with commas.

1. All
2. InboundMail
3. OutboundMail

[1]> 1

Receiving resumed.
mail3.example.com>

settime

Description

The settime command allows you to manually set the time if you are not using an NTP server. The command asks you if you want to stop NTP and manually set the system clock. Enter the time is using this format: MM/DD/YYYY HH:MM:SS.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-56  settime

mail3.example.com> settime

WARNING: Changes to system time will take place immediately
and do not require the user to run the commit command.

This machine is currently running NTP.
In order to manually set the time, NTP must be disabled.
Do you want to stop NTP and manually set the time? [N]> Y

Please enter the time in MM/DD/YYYY HH:MM:SS format.
[]> 09/23/2001 21:03:53


settz

Description

Set the local time zone.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-57  \texttt{settz}

mail3.example.com> \texttt{settz}

Current time zone: Etc/GMT
Current time zone version: 2010.02.0

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- \texttt{SETUP} - Set the local time zone.

\texttt{[> setup}

Please choose your continent:
1. Africa
2. America
[ ... ]
11. GMT Offset

\texttt{[2]> 2}

Please choose your country:
1. Anguilla
[ ... ]
45. United States
46. Uruguay
47. Venezuela
48. Virgin Islands (British)
49. Virgin Islands (U.S.)

\texttt{[45]> 45}

Please choose your timezone:
shutdown

Description

Shut down the system to power off

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Table 3-57  settz (Continued)

1. Alaska Time (Anchorage)
2. Alaska Time - Alaska panhandle (Juneau)
   
Current time zone: America/Los_Angeles

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Set the local time zone.

[21]> 21

[21]>
Example

Table 3-58  shutdown

mail3.example.com> shutdown

Enter the number of seconds to wait before abruptly closing connections.

[30]> System shutting down. Please wait while the queue is being closed.

Closing CLI connection.

Use the power button (in 30 seconds) to turn off the machine.

sshconfig

Description

Configure SSH keys.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to cluster mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

In the following example, a new public key is installed for the admin account:

Table 3-59  sshconfig - Install a New Public Key for the ‘Admin’ Account

mail3.example.com> sshconfig

Currently installed keys for admin:

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new key.
Disabling SSH1

To disable (or enable) SSH1, use the setup subcommand of the sshconfig command:

Table 3-60   sshconfig - Enabling/Disabling SSH1

mail3.example.com> sshconfig

Currently installed keys for admin:

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new key.
Table 3-60  sshconfig - Enabling/Disabling SSH1 (Continued)

- USER - Switch to a different user to edit.
- SETUP - Configure general settings.

[]> setup

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- DISABLE - Disable SSH v1

[]> disable

Currently installed keys for admin:

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Add a new key.
- USER - Switch to a different user to edit.
- SETUP - Configure general settings

[]>

status

Description

Show system status.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-61 status

mail3.example.com> status

Status as of: Thu Oct 21 14:33:27 2004 PDT
Up since: Wed Oct 20 15:47:58 2004 PDT (22h 45m 29s)
Last counter reset: Never
System status: Online
Oldest Message: 4 weeks 46 mins 53 secs

Counters: RESET UPTIME LIFETIME
Receiving
Messages Received 62,049,822 290,920 62,049,822
Recipients Received 62,049,823 290,920 62,049,823
Rejection
Rejected Recipients 3,949,663 11,921 3,949,663
Dropped Messages 11,606,037 219 11,606,037
Queue
Soft Bounced Events 2,334,552 13,598 2,334,552
Completion
Completed Recipients 50,441,741 332,625 50,441,741
Current IDs
Message ID (MID) 99524480
Injection Conn. ID (ICID) 51180368
Delivery Conn. ID (DCID) 17550674

Gauges: Current
Connections
Current Inbound Conn. 0
supportrequest

Description

Send a message to Cisco customer support. This command requires that the appliance is able to send mail to the Internet. A trouble ticket is automatically created, or you can associate the support request with an existing trouble ticket.

To access Cisco technical support directly from the appliance, your Cisco.com user ID must be associated with your service agreement contract for this appliance. To view a list of service contracts that are currently associated with your Cisco.com profile, visit the Cisco.com Profile Manager at https://sso.cisco.com/autho/forms/CDClogin.html. If you do not have a Cisco.com user ID, register to get one. See information about registering for an account in the online help or user guide for your release.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a 'commit'.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto). This command requires access to the local file system.

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

The following example shows a support request that is not related to an existing support ticket.

```bash
> supportrequest
```

Table 3-61  status (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Current Outbound Conn.</th>
<th>14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Queue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Recipients</td>
<td>7,166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages In Work Queue</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages In Quarantine</td>
<td>16,248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilobytes Used</td>
<td>387,143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilobytes In Quarantine</td>
<td>338,206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilobytes Free</td>
<td>39,458,745</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Please Note:
If you have an urgent issue, please call one of our worldwide Support Centers (www.cisco.com/support). Use this command to open a technical support request for issues that are not urgent, such as:
- Request for information.
- Problem for which you have a work-around, but would like an alternative solution.

Do you want to send the support request to supportrequest@mail.qa? [Y]>

Do you want to send the support request to additional recipient(s)? [N]>

Is this support request associated with an existing support ticket? [N]>

Please select a technology related to this support request:
1. Security - Email and Web
2. Security - Management
[1]> 1

Please select a subtechnology related to this support request:
1. Cisco Email Security Appliance (C1x0,C3x0, C6x0, X10x0) - Misclassified Messages
2. Cisco Email Security Appliance (C1x0,C3x0, C6x0, X10x0) - SBRS
3. Cisco Email Security Appliance (C1x0,C3x0, C6x0, X10x0) - Other
4. Email Security Appliance - Virtual
[1]> 3

Please select the problem category:
1. Install
2. Configure
3. Operate
4. Upgrade
[1]> 3

Please select a problem sub-category:
1. Interoperability
2. Password Recovery
3. Licensing
4. Hardware Failure
5. Error Messages, Logs
6. Software Failure
[1]> 5

Please enter a subject line for this support request: []> <Subject line for support request>

Please enter a description of your issue, providing as much detail as possible to aid in diagnosis: []> <Description of issue>

For future correspondence on this issue, please enter the name of the contact person: []> <Your name>

Please enter your email address: []> me@example.com

Please enter any additional contact information (e.g. phone number): []>

Please wait while configuration information is generated...
Do you want to print the support request to the screen?
[N]>  

**suspend**

**Description**
Suspend receiving and deliveries.

**Usage**
- **Commit**: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
- **Cluster Management**: This command is restricted to machine mode.
- **Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-62</th>
<th>suspend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mail3.example.com&gt; suspend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enter the number of seconds to wait before abruptly closing connections.

[30]> 45

Waiting for listeners to exit...

Receiving suspended for Listener 1.

Waiting for outgoing deliveries to finish...

Mail delivery suspended.

mail3.example.com>  

**suspenddel**

**Description**
Suspend deliveries
Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

Table 3-63  suspenddel

mail.example.com> suspenddel

Enter the number of seconds to wait before abruptly closing connections.
[30]>

Enter one or more domains [comma-separated] to which you want to suspend delivery.
[ALL]> domain1.com, domain2.com, domain3.com

Waiting for outgoing deliveries to finish...
Mail delivery suspended.

suspendlistener

Description

Suspend receiving.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

**Table 3-64  suspendlistener**

mail3.example.com> suspendlistener

Choose the listener(s) you wish to suspend.
Separate multiple entries with commas.
1. All
2. InboundMail
3. OutboundMail
[1]> 1

Enter the number of seconds to wait before abruptly closing connections.
[30]>

Waiting for listeners to exit...
Receiving suspended.
mail3.example.com>

techsupport

Description

Allow Cisco TAC to access your system.

Usage

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-65   techsupport

mail3.example.com> techsupport

S/N XXXXXXXXXXXX-XXXXXXX
Service Access currently disabled.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- ENABLE - Allow a customer service representative to remotely access your system to assist you in solving your technical issues.
- STATUS - Display the current techsupport status.

[]> enable

Enter a temporary password for customer care to use. This password may not be the same as your admin password. This password will not be able to be used to directly access your system.

[]> **********

Are you sure you want to enable service access? [N]> y

Service access has been ENABLED. Please provide your temporary password to your customer support representative.

S/N 00065BF3BA6D-9WFWC21
Service Access currently ENABLED (0 current service logins).

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- DISABLE - Prevent customer service representatives from remotely accessing your system.
- STATUS - Display the current techsupport status.

[]> tlsverify
Description

Establish an outbound TLS connection on demand and debug any TLS connection issues concerning a destination domain. To create the connection, specify the domain to verify against and the destination host. AsyncOS checks the TLS connection based on the Required (Verify) TLS setting.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format

The batch format of the `tlsverify` command can be used to perform all the functions of the traditional CLI command to check the TLS connection to the given hostname.

```
tlsverify <domain> <hostname>[:<port>]
```
Example

**Table 3-66  **

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>tlsverify</strong></td>
<td>Trace the flow of a message through the system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

mail3.example.com> tlsverify

Enter the TLS domain to verify against:

[]> example.com

Enter the destination host to connect to. Append the port (example.com:26) if you are not connecting on port 25:

[example.com]> mxe.example.com:25

Connecting to 1.1.1.1 on port 25.
Connected to 1.1.1.1 from interface 10.10.10.10.
Checking TLS connection.
TLS connection established: protocol TLSv1, cipher RC4-SHA.
Verifying peer certificate.
Verifying certificate common name mxe.example.com.
TLS certificate match mxe.example.com
TLS certificate verified.
TLS connection to 1.1.1.1 succeeded.

TLS successfully connected to mxe.example.com.
TLS verification completed.

**trace**

**Description**

Trace the flow of a message through the system

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-67  trace

mail3.example.com> trace

Enter the source IP
[]> 192.168.1.1

Enter the fully qualified domain name of the source IP
[]> example.com

Select the listener to trace behavior on:
1. InboundMail
2. OutboundMail
[1]> 1

Fetching default SenderBase values...

Enter the SenderBase Org ID of the source IP. The actual ID is N/A.
[N/A]>

Enter the SenderBase Reputation Score of the source IP. The actual score is N/A.
[N/A]>

Enter the Envelope Sender address:
[]> pretend.sender@example.net

Enter the Envelope Recipient addresses. Separate multiple addresses by commas.
[]> admin@example.com
Table 3-67  trace (Continued)

Load message from disk? [Y]> n

Enter or paste the message body here. Enter '.' on a blank line to end.

Subject: Hello
This is a test message.
.
HAT matched on unnamed sender group, host ALL
  - Applying $ACCEPTED policy (ACCEPT behavior).
  - Maximum Message Size: 100M (Default)
  - Maximum Number Of Connections From A Single IP: 1000 (Default)
  - Maximum Number Of Messages Per Connection: 1,000 (Default)
  - Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Message: 1,000 (Default)
  - Maximum Recipients Per Hour: 100 (Default)
  - Use SenderBase For Flow Control: Yes (Default)
  - Spam Detection Enabled: Yes (Default)
  - Virus Detection Enabled: Yes (Default)
  - Allow TLS Connections: No (Default)

Processing MAIL FROM:
  - Default Domain Processing: No Change

Processing Recipient List:
Processing admin@ironport.com
  - Default Domain Processing: No Change
  - Domain Map: No Change
  - RAT matched on admin@ironport.com, behavior = ACCEPT
  - Alias expansion: No Change
Table 3-67  trace (Continued)

Message Processing:
- No Virtual Gateway(tm) Assigned
- No Bounce Profile Assigned

Domain Masquerading/LDAP Processing:
- No Changes.

Processing filter 'always_deliver':
Evaluating Rule:   rcpt-to == "@mail.qa"
   Result = False
Evaluating Rule:   rcpt-to == "ironport.com"
   Result = True
Evaluating Rule:   OR
   Result = True
Executing Action:  deliver()

Footer Stamping:
- Not Performed

Inbound Recipient Policy Processing: (matched on Management Upgrade policy)
Message going to:  admin@ironport.com

AntiSpam Evaluation:
- Not Spam

AntiVirus Evaluation:
- Message Clean.
Table 3-67  trace (Continued)

- Elapsed Time = '0.000 sec'

Outbreak Filter Evaluation:

- No threat detected

Message Enqueued for Delivery

Would you like to see the resulting message? [Y]> y

Final text for messages matched on policy Management Upgrade

Final Envelope Sender:  pretend.sender@example.doma

Final Recipients:

- admin@ironport.com

Final Message Content:

Received: from remotehost.example.com (HELO TEST) (1.2.3.4)
   by stacy.qa with TEST; 19 Oct 2004 00:54:48 -0700
Message-Id: <3i93q9$@Management>
X-IronPort-AV: i="3.86,81,1096873200";
   d="scan'208"; a="0:sNHT0"
Subject: hello

This is a test message.

Run through another debug session? [N]>
Note
When using `trace`, you must include both the header and the body of the message pasted into the CLI.

**tzupdate**

**Description**

Update timezone rules

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto).

**Batch Command:** This command supports a batch format.

**Batch Format**

The batch format of the `tzupdate` command forces an update off all time zone rules even if no changes are detected.

```
tzupdate [force]
```

**Example**

```
estx16-esa01.qa> tzupdate

Requesting update of Timezone Rules
```

**updateconfig**

**Description**

Configure system update parameters.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.
Example

In the following example, the updateconfig command is used to configure the appliance to download update images from Cisco servers and download the list of available AsyncOS upgrades from a local server.

```
> updateconfig
Service (images):                  Update URL:
----------------------------------------------------------------------
Feature Key updates                http://downloads.ironport.com/asyncos
McAfee Anti-Virus definitions      Cisco IronPort Servers
RSA DLP Engine Updates             Cisco IronPort Servers
PXE Engine Updates                 Cisco IronPort Servers
Sophos Anti-Virus definitions      Cisco IronPort Servers
IronPort Anti-Spam rules           Cisco IronPort Servers
Outbreak Filters rules             Cisco IronPort Servers
Timezone rules                     Cisco IronPort Servers
Enrollment Client Updates          Cisco IronPort Servers
Cisco IronPort AsyncOS upgrades    Cisco IronPort Servers

Service (list):                    Update URL:
----------------------------------------------------------------------
McAfee Anti-Virus definitions      Cisco IronPort Servers
RSA DLP Engine Updates             Cisco IronPort Servers
PXE Engine Updates                 Cisco IronPort Servers
Sophos Anti-Virus definitions      Cisco IronPort Servers
IronPort Anti-Spam rules           Cisco IronPort Servers
Outbreak Filters rules             Cisco IronPort Servers
Timezone rules                     Cisco IronPort Servers
Enrollment Client Updates          Cisco IronPort Servers
Cisco IronPort AsyncOS upgrades    Cisco IronPort Servers

Update interval: 5m
Proxy server: not enabled
HTTPS Proxy server: not enabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Edit update configuration.
[]> setup

For the following services, please select where the system will download updates from:
Service (images):                  Update URL:
----------------------------------------------------------------------
Feature Key updates                http://downloads.ironport.com/asyncos

1. Use Cisco IronPort update servers (http://downloads.ironport.com)
2. Use own server
[1]>

For the following services, please select where the system will download updates from
Service (images):                  Update URL:
----------------------------------------------------------------------
McAfee Anti-Virus definitions      Cisco IronPort Servers
RSA DLP Engine Updates             Cisco IronPort Servers
PXE Engine Updates                 Cisco IronPort Servers
Sophos Anti-Virus definitions      Cisco IronPort Servers
IronPort Anti-Spam rules           Cisco IronPort Servers
```
Outbreak Filters rules       Cisco IronPort Servers
Timezone rules              Cisco IronPort Servers
Enrollment Client Updates   Cisco IronPort Servers

1. Use Cisco IronPort update servers
2. Use own server

[1]>

For the following services, please select where the system will download updates from (images):

Service [images]:           Update URL:
---------------------------------------------------------------
Cisco IronPort AsyncOS upgrades Cisco IronPort Servers

1. Use Cisco IronPort update servers
2. Use own server

[1]>

For the following services, please select where the system will download the list of available updates from:

Service (list):           Update URL:
--------------------------------------------------------------------------
McAfee Anti-Virus definitions Cisco IronPort Servers
RSA DLP Engine Updates     Cisco IronPort Servers
PXE Engine Updates         Cisco IronPort Servers
Sophos Anti-Virus definitions Cisco IronPort Servers
IronPort Anti-Spam rules   Cisco IronPort Servers
Outbreak Filters rules     Cisco IronPort Servers
Timezone rules             Cisco IronPort Servers
Enrollment Client Updates  Cisco IronPort Servers

1. Use Cisco IronPort update servers
2. Use own update list

[1]>

For the following services, please select where the system will download the list of available updates from:

Service (list):           Update URL:
--------------------------------------------------------------------------
Cisco IronPort AsyncOS upgrades Cisco IronPort Servers

1. Use Cisco IronPort update servers
2. Use own update list

[1]>

Enter the time interval between checks for new:
- McAfee Anti-Virus definitions
- PXE Engine Updates
- Sophos Anti-Virus definitions
- IronPort Anti-Spam rules
- Outbreak Filters rules
- Timezone rules
- Enrollment Client Updates

Use a trailing 's' for seconds, 'm' for minutes or 'h' for hours. The minimum valid update time is 30s or enter '0' to disable automatic updates (manual updates will still be available for individual services).

[5m]>

When initiating a connection to the update server the originating IP interface is chosen automatically. If you want to choose a specific interface, please specify it now.

1. Auto
2. Management

[1]>
Do you want to set up a proxy server for HTTP updates for ALL of the following services:

- Feature Key updates
- McAfee Anti-Virus definitions
- RSA DLP Engine Updates
- PXE Engine Updates
- Sophos Anti-Virus definitions
- IronPort Anti-Spam rules
- Outbreak Filters rules
- Virus Threat Level updates
- Timezone rules
- Enrollment Client Updates
- Cisco IronPort AsyncOS upgrades
- URL Filtering Service

[N]>

Do you want to set up an HTTPS proxy server for HTTPS updates for ALL of the following services:

- Feature Key updates
- McAfee Anti-Virus definitions
- RSA DLP Engine Updates
- PXE Engine Updates
- Sophos Anti-Virus definitions
- IronPort Anti-Spam rules
- Outbreak Filters rules
- Timezone rules
- Enrollment Client Updates
- Cisco IronPort AsyncOS upgrades
- SenderBase Network Participation sharing
- URL Filtering Service

[N]>

**updatenow**

**Description**

Requests an update to all system service components.

**Usage**

**Commit**: This command does not require a 'commit'.

**Cluster Management**: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto).

**Batch Command**: This command does support a batch format.

**Batch Format**

The batch format of the `updatenow` command can be used to update all components on the appliance even if no changes are detected.

```
updatenow [force]
```
Example

mail3.example.com> updatenow

Success - All component updates requested

version

Description

View system version information

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

**Table 3-68 version**

mail3.example.com> version

Current Version

=============

Model: C60
Version: 4.5.0-316
Build Date: 2005-04-13
Install Date: 2005-04-14 13:32:20
Serial #: XXXXXXXXXXX-XXXXXXX
BIOS: A15I
RAID: 2.7-1 3170
RAID Status: Okay
RAID Type: 10

mail3.example.com>

**upgrade**

**Description**

The upgrade CLI command displays a list of available upgrades and upgrades the AsyncOS system to the version specified by the user.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

**Table 3-69 upgrade**

mail3.example.com> upgrade

Upgrades available:
Table 3-69 upgrade (Continued)

1. AsyncOS (**DON’T TOUCH!***) 4.0.8 upgrade, 2005-05-09 Build 900

2. AsyncOS 4.0.8 upgrade, 2005-08-12 Build 030

......

45. SenderBase Network Participation Patch

[45]>

Performing an upgrade will require a reboot of the system after the upgrade is applied.

Do you wish to proceed with the upgrade? [Y]> Y

## LDAP

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- `ldapconfig`
- `ldapflush`
- `ldaptest`
- `sievechar`

### ldapconfig

**Description**

Configure LDAP servers

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.
Example - Creating a New LDAP Server Profile

In the following example, the `ldapconfig` command is used to define an LDAP server for the appliance to bind to, and queries for recipient acceptance (ldapaccept subcommand), routing (ldaprouting subcommand), masquerading (masquerade subcommand), end-user authentication for the Spam Quarantine (isqauth subcommand), and alias consolidation for spam notifications (isqalias subcommand) are configured.

First, the nickname of “PublicLDAP” is given for the `mldapserver.example.com` LDAP server. Queries are directed to port 3268 (the default). The search base of `example.com` is defined (dc=example,dc=com), and queries for recipient acceptance, mail re-routing, and masquerading are defined. The queries in this example are similar to an OpenLDAP directory configuration which uses the inetLocalMailRecipient auxiliary object class defined in the expired Internet Draft `draft-lachman-laser-ldap-mail-routing-xx.txt`, also sometimes known as “the Laser spec.” (A version of this draft is included with the OpenLDAP source distribution.) Note that in this example, the alternate mailhost to use for queried recipients in the mail re-routing query is `mailForwardingAddress`. Remember that query names are case-sensitive and must match exactly in order to return the proper results.

**Table 3-70  ldapconfig - New Server Profile**

```
mail3.example.com> ldapconfig

No LDAP server configurations.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new server configuration.
- SETUP - Configure LDAP options.

[>] new

Please create a name for this server configuration (Ex: "PublicLDAP"): 

[>] PublicLDAP

Please enter the hostname:

[>] myldapserver.example.com

Use SSL to connect to the LDAP server? [N]> n

Select the authentication method to use for this server configuration:

1. Anonymous
2. Password based

[1]> 2

Please enter the bind username:

[<cn=Anonymous>]

Please enter the bind password:

[]>

Connect to LDAP server to validate setting? [Y]

Connecting to the LDAP server, please wait...

Select the server type to use for this server configuration:

1. Active Directory

2. OpenLDAP

3. Unknown or Other

[3]> 1

Please enter the port number:

[3268]> 3268

Please enter the base:

[<dc=example,dc=com>]<dc=example,dc=com

Name: PublicLDAP
Hostname: myldapserver.example.com Port 3268
Server Type: Active Directory
Authentication Type: password
Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SERVER - Change the server for the query.
- TEST - Test the server configuration.
- LDAPACCEPT - Configure whether a recipient address should be accepted or bounced/dropped.
- LDAPROUTING - Configure message routing.
- MASQUERADE - Configure domain masquerading.
- LDAPGROUP - Configure whether a sender or recipient is in a specified group.
- SMTPAUTH - Configure SMTP authentication.
- EXTERNALAUTH - Configure external authentication queries.
- ISQAUTH - Configure Spam Quarantine End-User Authentication Query.
- ISQALIAS - Configure Spam Quarantine Alias Consolidation Query.

[> ldapaccept

Please create a name for this query:

[PublicLDAP.ldapaccept]> PublicLDAP.ldapaccept

Enter the LDAP query string:

[(proxyAddresses=smtp:{a})]> (proxyAddresses=smtp:{a})

Do you want to test this query? [Y]> n

Name: PublicLDAP
Hostname: myldaps.example.com Port 3268
Server Type: Active Directory
Authentication Type: password
Table 3-70  ldapconfig – New Server Profile (Continued)

Base: dc=example,dc=com

LDAPACCEPT: PublicLDAP.ldapaccept

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SERVER - Change the server for the query.
- LDAPACCEPT - Configure whether a recipient address should be accepted or bounced/dropped.
- LDAPROUTING - Configure message routing.
- MASQUERADE - Configure domain masquerading.
- LDAPGROUP - Configure whether a sender or recipient is in a specified group.
- SMTPAUTH - Configure SMTP authentication.
- EXTERNALAUTH - Configure external authentication queries.
- ISQAUTH - Configure Spam Quarantine End-User Authentication Query.
- ISQALIAS - Configure Spam Quarantine Alias Consolidation Query.

[]> ldaprouting

Please create a name for this query:

[PublicLDAP.routing]> PublicLDAP.routing

Enter the LDAP query string:

[(mailLocalAddress={a})]> (mailLocalAddress={a})

Do you want to rewrite the Envelope Header? [N]> y

Enter the attribute which contains the full rfc822 email address for the recipients.

[]> mailRoutingAddress

Do you want to send the messages to an alternate mail host? [N]> y
Enter the attribute which contains the alternate mailhost for the recipients.

\[>\) mailForwardingAddress

Do you want to test this query? [Y]> n

Name: PublicLDAP
Hostname: myldapserver.example.com Port 3268
Server Type: Active Directory
Authentication Type: password
Base: dc=example,dc=com
LDAPACCEPT: PublicLDAP.ldapaccept
LDAPROUTING: PublicLDAP.routing

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SERVER - Change the server for the query.
- LDAPACCEPT - Configure whether a recipient address should be accepted or bounced/dropped.
- LDAPROUTING - Configure message routing.
- MASQUERADE - Configure domain masquerading.
- LDAPGROUP - Configure whether a sender or recipient is in a specified group.
- SMTPAUTH - Configure SMTP authentication.
- EXTERNALAUTH - Configure external authentication queries.
- ISQAUTH - Configure Spam Quarantine End-User Authentication Query.
- ISQALIAS - Configure Spam Quarantine Alias Consolidation Query.

\[>\) masquerade

Please create a name for this query:

[PublicLDAP.masquerade]> PublicLDAP.masquerade
**Table 3-70  ldapconfig - New Server Profile (Continued)**

Enter the LDAP query string:

```
[(mailRoutingAddress={a})]>(mailRoutingAddress={a})
```

Enter the attribute which contains the externally visible full rfc822 email address.

```
[]>(mailLocalAddress)
```

Do you want the results of the returned attribute to replace the entire friendly portion of the original recipient? [N]> n

Do you want to test this query? [Y]> n

Name: PublicLDAP
Hostname: myldapserver.example.com Port 3268
Server Type: Active Directory
Authentication Type: password
Base: dc=example,dc=com
LDAPACCEPT: PublicLDAP.ldapaccept
LDAPROUTING: PublicLDAP.routing
MASQUERADE: PublicLDAP.masquerade

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SERVER - Change the server for the query.
- LDAPACCEPT - Configure whether a recipient address should be accepted or bounced/dropped.
- LDAPROUTING - Configure message routing.
- MASQUERADE - Configure domain masquerading.
- LDAPGROUP - Configure whether a sender or recipient is in a specified group.
LDAP

- SMTPAUTH - Configure SMTP authentication.
- EXTERNALAUTH - Configure external authentication queries.
- ISQAUTH - Configure Spam Quarantine End-User Authentication Query.
- ISQALIAS - Configure Spam Quarantine Alias Consolidation Query.

[]> isqauth

Please create a name for this query:

[PublicLDAP.isqauth]> PublicLDAP.isqauth

Enter the LDAP query string:

[(sAMAccountName={u})]> (sAMAccountName={u})

Enter the list of email attributes.

[]> mail,proxyAddresses

Do you want to activate this query? [Y]> y

Do you want to test this query? [Y]> y

User identity to use in query:

[]> admin@example.com

Password to use in query:

[]> password

LDAP query test results:

LDAP Server: myldapserver.example.com
Query: PublicLDAP.isqauth

Table 3-70  ldapconfig - New Server Profile (Continued)
User: admin@example.com

Action: match positive

LDAP query test finished.

Name: PublicLDAP

Hostname: myldapserver.example.com Port 3268

Server Type: Active Directory

Authentication Type: password

Base: dc=example,dc=com

LDAPACCEPT: PublicLDAP.ldapaccept

LDAPROUTING: PublicLDAP.routing

MASQUERADE: PublicLDAP.masquerade

ISQAUTH: PublicLDAP.isqauth [active]

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SERVER - Change the server for the query.
- LDAPACCEPT - Configure whether a recipient address should be accepted or bounced/dropped.
- LDAPROUTING - Configure message routing.
- MASQUERADE - Configure domain masquerading.
- LDAPGROUP - Configure whether a sender or recipient is in a specified group.
- SMTPAUTH - Configure SMTP authentication.
- EXTERNALAUTH - Configure external authentication queries.
- ISQAUTH - Configure Spam Quarantine End-User Authentication Query.
- ISQALIAS - Configure Spam Quarantine Alias Consolidation Query.
Example - Configuring Global Settings

In the following example, the LDAP global settings are configured, including the certificate for TLS connections.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new server configuration.
- SETUP - Configure LDAP options.
- EDIT - Modify a server configuration.
- DELETE - Remove a server configuration.

Choose the IP interface for LDAP traffic.
1. Auto
2. Management (10.92.145.175/24: esx16-esa01.qa)

[1]> setup

Table 3-70  ldapconfig - New Server Profile (Continued)

Current LDAP server configurations:
1. PublicLDAP: (myldapsrver.example.com:3268)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new server configuration.
- SETUP - Configure LDAP options.
- EDIT - Modify a server configuration.
- DELETE - Remove a server configuration.

Table 3-71  ldapconfig - Configuring Global Settings

mail3.example.com> ldapconfig

No LDAP server configurations.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new server configuration.
- SETUP - Configure LDAP options.

[1]> setup

Choose the IP interface for LDAP traffic.
1. Auto
2. Management (10.92.145.175/24: esx16-esa01.qa)

[1]> 1
**ldapflush**

**Description**

Flush any cached LDAP results.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.
**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format

**Example**

**Table 3-72  ldapflush**

mail3.example.com> ldapflush

Are you sure you want to flush any cached LDAP results? [N]> y

Flushing cache

mail3.example.com>

**ldapflush**

**Description**

Perform a single LDAP query test

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format

**Example**

In this example, the ldaptest command is used to test the only recipient acceptance query for the configured LDAP server configuration. The recipient address “admin@example.com” passes the test, while the recipient address “bogus@example.com” fails.

**Table 3-73  ldaptest**

mail3.example.com> ldaptest

Select which LDAP query to test:

1. PublicLDAP.ldapaccept

[1]> 1

Address to use in query:

[> admin@example.com
LDAP query test results:

Query: PublicLDAP.ldapaccept
Argument: admin@example.com
Action: pass

LDAP query test finished.
mail3.example.com> ldapetest

Select which LDAP query to test:
1. PublicLDAP.ldapaccept
[1]> 1
Address to use in query:
[]> bogus@example.com

LDAP query test results:

Query: PublicLDAP.ldapaccept
Argument: bogus@example.com
Action: drop or bounce (depending on listener settings)
Reason: no matching LDAP record was found
LDAP query test finished.
mail3.example.com>
sievechar

Description

Sets or disables the character used for Sieve Email Filtering, as described in RFC 3598. Note that the Sieve Character is ONLY recognized in LDAP Accept and LDAP Reroute queries. Other parts of the system will operate on the complete email address.

Allowable characters are: -_=+/^#

Usage

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format

Example

In this example, the sievechar command is used to define + as the sieve character recognized in Accept and LDAP Reroute queries.

```plaintext
mail3.example.com> sievechar

Sieve Email Filtering is currently disabled.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Set the separator character.

[]> setup

Enter the Sieve Filter Character, or a space to disable Sieve Filtering.

[]> +

Sieve Email Filter is enabled, using the ‘+’ character as separator.

This applies only to LDAP Accept and LDAP Reroute Queries.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
This section contains the following CLI commands:

- `addresslistconfig`
- `aliasconfig`
- `archivemessage`
- `alsrchost`
- `bouncconfig`
- `bouncerecipients`
- `bvconfig`
- `deleterecipients`
- `deliveryconfig`
- `delivernow`
- `destconfig`
- `hostrate`
- `hoststatus`
- `oldmessage`
- `rate`
- `redirectrecipients`
- `resetcounters`
- `removemessage`
- `showmessage`
- `showrecipients`
- `status`
- `toplevels`
- `topin`
- `unsubscribe`
- `workqueue`

**addresslistconfig**

**Description**

Configure address lists.
Usage

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format

The batch format for the `addresslistconfig` command can be used to create a new address list, edit an existing address list, print a list of address lists, delete an address list, or find conflicting addresses within an address list.

- **Adding a new address list**
  ```bash
  addresslistconfig new <name> --descr=<description> --addresses=<address1,address2,...>
  ```

- **Editing an existing address list:**
  ```bash
  addresslistconfig edit <name> --name=<new-name> --descr=<description> --addresses=<address1,address2,...>
  ```

- **Deleting an address list:**
  ```bash
  addresslistconfig delete <name>
  ```

- **Printing a list of address lists:**
  ```bash
  addresslistconfig print <name>
  ```

- **Finding conflicting addresses within an address list:**
  ```bash
  addresslistconfig conflicts <name>
  ```
Example

mail.example.com> addresslistconfig

No address lists configured.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new address list.
[]> new

Enter a name for the address list:
> add-list1

Enter a description for the address list:
> This is a sample address list.

Do you want to enter only full Email Addresses? [N]> Y

Enter a comma separated list of addresses:
(e.g.: user@example.com)
> user1@example.com, user2@example.com

Address list 'add-list1' added.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new address list.
- EDIT - Modify an address list.
- DELETE - Remove an address list.
- PRINT - Display the contents of an address list.
- CONFLICTS - Find conflicting entries within an address list.
[]>

aliasconfig

Description

Configure email aliases.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format

The batch format of the aliasconfig command can be used to add a new alias table, edit an existing table, print a list of email aliases, and import/export alias table. To invoke as a batch command, use the following format of the aliasconfig command with the variables listed below:

- Adding a new email alias:

aliasconfig new <domain> <alias> [email_address1] [email_address2] ...
Using the `aliasconfig new` command with a non-existant domain causes the domain to be created.

- Editing an existing email alias

  ```
  aliasconfig edit <domain> <alias> <email_address1> [email_address2] ...
  ```

- Displaying an email alias:

  ```
  aliasconfig print
  ```

- Importing a local alias listing:

  ```
  aliasconfig import <filename>
  ```

- Exporting an alias listing on the appliance:

  ```
  aliasconfig export <filename>
  ```
Example

**Table 3-74 aliasconfig**

```
mail3.example.com> aliasconfig

Enter address(es) for "customercare".
Separate multiple addresses with commas.
[]> bob@example.com, frank@example.com, sally@example.com

Adding alias customercare:
bob@example.com,frank@example.com,sally@example.com

Do you want to add another alias? [N]> n

There are currently 1 mappings defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- PRINT - Display the table.
- IMPORT - Import aliases from a file.
- EXPORT - Export table to a file.
- CLEAR - Clear the table.
[]> new

How do you want your aliases to apply?

1. Globally
2. Add a new domain context
3. example.com```
Enter the alias(es) to match on.
Separate multiple aliases with commas.

Allowed aliases:
- "user@domain" - This email address.
- "user" - This user for any domain
- "@domain" - All users in this domain.
- "@.partialdomain" - All users in this domain, or any of its subdomains.

Enter address(es) for "admin".
Separate multiple addresses with commas.

Adding alias admin: administrator@example.com

Do you want to add another alias?  [N]>  n

There are currently 2 mappings defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- PRINT - Display the table.
- IMPORT - Import aliases from a file.
Table 3-74  aliasconfig (Continued)

- EXPORT - Export table to a file.
- CLEAR - Clear the table.

[]> print

admin: administrator@example.com

[ example.com ]
customercare: bob@example.com, frank@example.com, sally@example.com

There are currently 2 mappings defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- PRINT - Display the table.
- IMPORT - Import aliases from a file.
- EXPORT - Export table to a file.
- CLEAR - Clear the table.

[]>

Table 3-75  Arguments for Configuring Aliases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;domain&gt;</td>
<td>The domain context in which an alias is applied. ‘Global’ specifies the Global Domain Context.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3-75  Arguments for Configuring Aliases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;alias&gt;</td>
<td>The name of the alias to configure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aliases permitted at the Global Comain Context:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘user@domain’ — This email address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘user’ — This user for any domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘@domain’ — All users in this domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘@.partialdomain’ — All users in this domain or any of its sub-domains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;alias&gt;</td>
<td>Aliases permitted for specific domain contexts:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘user’ — This user in this domain context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘user@domain’ — This email address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;email_address&gt;</td>
<td>The email address that an alias mapps to. A single alias can map to multiple email addresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;filename&gt;</td>
<td>The filename to use with importing/exporting the alias table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

archivemessage

Description

Archive older messages in your queue.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a commit.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

In the following example, an older message is archived:

Table 3-76  archivemessage

mail3.example.com> archivemessage

Enter the MID to archive.

[0]> 47
**Description**  
Configure Virtual Gateway (tm) mappings.

**Usage**  
**Commit:**  This command requires a ‘commit’.
**Cluster Management:**  This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
**Batch Command:**  This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**  
In the following example, the `altsrchost` table is printed to show that there are no existing mappings. Two entries are then created:
- Mail from the groupware server host named `@exchange.example.com` is mapped to the PublicNet interface.
- Mail from the sender IP address of 192.168.35.35 (for example, the marketing campaign messaging system) is mapped to the AnotherPublicNet interface.

Finally, the `altsrchost` mappings are printed to confirm and the changes are committed.

```
Table 3-77   altsrchost

mail3.example.com> altsrchost

There are currently no mappings configured.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new mapping.
- IMPORT - Load new mappings from a file.

[]> new
```
Mail Delivery Configuration/Monitoring

Chapter 3      The Commands: Reference Examples

**Table 3-77     
*altsrchost (Continued)*

Enter the Envelope From address or client IP address for which you want to set up a Virtual Gateway mapping. Partial addresses such as "@example.com" or "user0" are allowed.

[1]> @exchange.example.com

Which interface do you want to send messages for @exchange.example.com from?

1. AnotherPublicNet (192.168.2.2/24: mail4.example.com)
2. Management (192.168.42.42/24: mail3.example.com)
3. PrivateNet (192.168.1.1/24: mail3.example.com)
4. PublicNet (192.168.2.1/24: mail4.example.com)

[1]> 4

Mapping for @exchange.example.com on interface PublicNet created.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **NEW** - Create a new mapping.
- **EDIT** - Modify a mapping.
- **DELETE** - Remove a mapping.
- **IMPORT** - Load new mappings from a file.
- **EXPORT** - Export all mappings to a file.
- **PRINT** - Display all mappings.
- **CLEAR** - Remove all mappings.

[1]> new

Enter the Envelope From address or client IP address for which you want to set up a Virtual Gateway mapping. Partial addresses such as "@example.com" or "user0" are allowed.

[1]> 192.168.35.35

Which interface do you want to send messages for 192.168.35.35 from?
Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new mapping.
- EDIT - Modify a mapping.
- DELETE - Remove a mapping.
- IMPORT - Load new mappings from a file.
- EXPORT - Export all mappings to a file.
- PRINT - Display all mappings.
- CLEAR - Remove all mappings.

[1]> print

1. 192.168.35.35 -> AnotherPublicNet

2. @exchange.example.com -> PublicNet

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new mapping.
- EDIT - Modify a mapping.
- DELETE - Remove a mapping.
- IMPORT - Load new mappings from a file.
- EXPORT - Export all mappings to a file.
- PRINT - Display all mappings.
**Table 3-77**  \textit{altsrchost (Continued)}

- CLEAR - Remove all mappings.

```
[]>

mail3.example.com> commit
```

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

```
[]> Added 2 altsrchost mappings
```

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT

### bounceconfig

**Description**

Configure the behavior of bounces.

**Usage**

- **Commit**: This command requires a ‘commit’.
- **Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
- **Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

In the following example, a bounce profile named \textit{bounceprofile} is created using the \textit{bounceconfig} command. In this profile, all hard bounced messages are sent to the alternate address bounce-mailbox@example.com. Delay warnings messages are enabled. One warning message will be sent per recipient, and the default value of 4 hours (14400 seconds) between warning messages is accepted.

**Table 3-78**  \textit{bounceconfig - Creating a Bounce Profile}

```
mail3.example.com> bounceconfig
```

Current bounce profiles:

1. Default
Table 3-78  

**bounceconfig - Creating a Bounce Profile**

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new profile.
- EDIT - Modify a profile.

[>] new

Please create a name for the profile:

[>] bounceprofile

Please enter the maximum number of retries.

[100]> 100

Please enter the maximum number of seconds a message may stay in the queue before being hard bounced.

[259200]> 259200

Please enter the initial number of seconds to wait before retrying a message.

[60]> 60

Please enter the maximum number of seconds to wait before retrying a message.

[3600]> 3600

Do you want a message sent for each hard bounce? (Yes/No/Default) [Y]> y

Do you want bounce messages to use the DSN message format? (Yes/No/Default) [Y]> y

If a message is undeliverable after some interval, do you want to send a delay warning message? (Yes/No/Default) [N]> y
Table 3-78  *bounceconfig* Creating a Bounce Profile

Please enter the minimum interval in seconds between delay warning messages.

[14400]> **14400**

Please enter the maximum number of delay warning messages to send per recipient.

[1]> **1**

Do you want hard bounce and delay warning messages sent to an alternate address, instead of the sender? [N]> **y**

Please enter the email address to send hard bounce and delay warning.

[]>`bounce-mailbox@example.com`

Current bounce profiles:

1. Default
2. bounceprofile

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **NEW** - Create a new profile.
- **EDIT** - Modify a profile.
- **DELETE** - Remove a profile.

[1]>  

`mail3.example.com>`
Editing the Default Bounce Profile

You can also edit the default bounce profile. In this example, the default profile is edited to increase the maximum number of seconds to wait before retrying unreachable hosts from 3600 (one hour) to 10800 (three hours):

| Table 3-79 | bounceconfig- Editing a Bounce Profile |

```
maint3.example.com> bounceconfig

Current bounce profiles:
1. Default
2. bounceprofile

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new profile.
- EDIT - Modify a profile.
- DELETE - Remove a profile.
[
]> edit

Please enter the number of the profile to edit:
[
]> 2

Please enter the maximum number of retries.
[100]> 

Please enter the maximum number of seconds a message may stay in the queue before being hard bounced.
[259200]> 

Please enter the initial number of seconds to wait before retrying a message.
[60]>
```
Applying a Bounce Profile to a Listener

After a bounce profile has been configured, you can apply the profile for each listener using the `listenerconfig --> bounceconfig` command and then committing the changes.

### Table 3-79  bounceconfig - Editing a Bounce Profile

Please enter the maximum number of seconds to wait before retrying a message.

```plaintext
[3600]> 10800
```

Do you want a message sent for each hard bounce? (Yes/No/Default)[Y]>

Do you want bounce messages to use the DSN message format? (Yes/No/Default) [N]>

If a message is undeliverable after some interval, do you want to send a delay warning message? (Yes/No/Default)[N]>

Do you want hard bounce messages sent to an alternate address, instead of the sender? [Y]>

Please enter the email address to send hard bounce.

```plaintext
[bounce-mailbox@example.com]>
```

Current bounce profiles:
1. Default
2. bounceprofile

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new profile.
- EDIT - Modify a profile.
- DELETE - Remove a profile.
Bounce profiles can be applied based upon the listener that a message was received on. However, this listener has nothing to do with how the message is ultimately delivered.

In this example, the OutboundMail private listener is edited and the bounce profile named `bouncepr1` is applied to it.

### Table 3-80 listenerconfig and bounceconfig - Applying a Bounce Profile to a Listener

```
mail3.example.com> listenerconfig

Currently configured listeners:

1. InboundMail (on PublicNet, 192.168.2.1) SMTP Port 25 Public
2. OutboundMail (on PrivateNet, 192.168.1.1) SMTP Port 25 Private

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new listener.
- EDIT - Modify a listener.
- DELETE - Remove a listener.
- SETUP - Change global settings.

[]> edit

Enter the name or number of the listener you wish to edit.

[]> 2

Name: OutboundMail
Type: Private
Interface: PrivateNet (192.168.1.1/24) TCP Port 25
Protocol: SMTP
Default Domain:
Max Concurrency: 600 (TCP Queue: 50)
Domain Map: Disabled
TLS: No
Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NAME - Change the name of the listener.
- INTERFACE - Change the interface.
- LIMITS - Change the injection limits.
- SETUP - Configure general options.
- HOSTACCESS - Modify the Host Access Table.
- BOUNCECONFIG - Choose the bounce profile to use for messages injected on this listener.
- MASQUERADE - Configure the Domain Masquerading Table.
- DOMAINMAP - Configure domain mappings.

[]> bounceconfig

Please choose a bounce profile to apply:
1. Default
2. bouncepr1
3. New Profile

[1]> 2

Name: OutboundMail
Type: Private
Interface: PrivateNet (192.168.1.1/24) TCP Port 25
Protocol: SMTP
Default Domain:
Table 3-80  listenerconfig and bounceconfig - Applying a Bounce Profile to a Listener

Max Concurrency: 600 (TCP Queue: 50)
Domain Map: Disabled
TLS: No
SMTP Authentication: Disabled
Bounce Profile: bouncepr1
Footer: None
LDAP: Off

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NAME - Change the name of the listener.
- INTERFACE - Change the interface.
- LIMITS - Change the injection limits.
- SETUP - Configure general options.
- HOSTACCESS - Modify the Host Access Table.
- BOUNCECONFIG - Choose the bounce profile to use for messages injected on this listener.
- MASQUERADE - Configure the Domain Masquerading Table.
- DOMAINMAP - Configure domain mappings.

Currently configured listeners:
1. InboundMail (on PublicNet, 192.168.2.1) SMTP Port 25 Public
2. OutboundMail (on PrivateNet, 192.168.1.1) SMTP Port 25 Private

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new listener.
- EDIT - Modify a listener.
- DELETE - Remove a listener.
bouncerecipients

Description

Bounce messages from the queue.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format

Example

Recipients to be bounced are identified by either the destination recipient host or the message sender identified by the specific address given in the Envelope From line of the message envelope. Alternately, all messages in the delivery queue can be bounced at once.
**Bounce by Recipient Host**

*Table 3-81 bouncerecipients - Bouncing Recipients by Host*

```
mail3.example.com> bouncerecipients

Please select how you would like to bounce messages:

1. By recipient host.
2. By Envelope From address.
3. All.

[1]> 1

Please enter the hostname for the messages you wish to bounce.

[]> example.com

Are you sure you want to bounce all messages being delivered to "example.com"? [N]> Y

Bouncing messages, please wait.

100 messages bounced.
```

**Bounce by Envelope From Address**

*Table 3-82 bouncerecipients - Bouncing Recipients by Address*

```
mail3.example.com> bouncerecipients

Please select how you would like to bounce messages:

1. By recipient host.
2. By Envelope From address.
3. All.

[1]> 2
```
**Mail Delivery Configuration/Monitoring**

**Chapter 3      The Commands: Reference Examples**

**Mail Delivery Configuration/Monitoring**

**Bounce All**

**Table 3-82  bouncerecipients - Bouncing Recipients by Address  (Continued)**

Please enter the Envelope From address for the messages you wish to bounce.

[*]> mailadmin@example.com

Are you sure you want to bounce all messages with the Envelope From address of "mailadmin@example.com"? [N]> Y

Bouncing messages, please wait.

100 messages bounced.

---

**Table 3-83  bouncerecipients - bouncing All Recipients**

mail3.example.com> bouncerecipients

Please select how you would like to bounce messages:

1. By recipient host.
2. By Envelope From address.
3. All.

[1]> 

Are you sure you want to bounce all messages in the queue? [N]> Y

Bouncing messages, please wait.

1000 messages bounced.

**bvconfig**

**Description**

Configure settings for Bounce Verification. Use this command to configure keys and invalid bounced emails.


Usage

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

Example

The following exampe shows key configuration and settings configured for invalid bounced emails.

**Table 3-84  bvconfig**

```
mail3.example.com> bvconfig

Behavior on invalid bounces: reject

Key for tagging outgoing mail: key

Previously-used keys for verifying incoming mail:

1. key (current outgoing key)
2. goodneighbor (last in use Wed May 31 23:21:01 2006 GMT)

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- KEY - Assign a new key for tagging outgoing mail.
- PURGE - Purge keys no longer needed for verifying incoming mail.
- CLEAR - Clear all keys including current key.
- SETUP - Set how invalid bounces will be handled.

[]> key

Enter the key to tag outgoing mail with (when tagging is enabled in the Good Neighbor Table)

[]> basic_key
```
Table 3-84 \textit{bvconfig}

Behavior on invalid bounces: reject

Key for tagging outgoing mail: basic_key

Previously-used keys for verifying incoming mail:

1. basic_key (current outgoing key)
2. key (last in use Wed May 31 23:22:49 2006 GMT)
3. goodneighbor (last in use Wed May 31 23:21:01 2006 GMT)

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- \textbf{KEY} - Assign a new key for tagging outgoing mail.
- \textbf{PURGE} - Purge keys no longer needed for verifying incoming mail.
- \textbf{CLEAR} - Clear all keys including current key.
- \textbf{SETUP} - Set how invalid bounces will be handled.

\textit{[\textbf{1}]} > \textbf{setup}

How do you want bounce messages which are not addressed to a valid tagged recipient to be handled?

1. Reject.
2. Add a custom header and deliver.

\textit{[\textbf{1}]}> \textbf{1}

Behavior on invalid bounces: reject

Key for tagging outgoing mail: basic_key

Previously-used keys for verifying incoming mail:
**deleterecipients**

**Description**

Delete messages from the queue

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format
Example

The appliance gives you various options to delete recipients depending upon the need. The following example show deleting recipients by recipient host, deleting by Envelope From Address, and deleting all recipients in the queue.
Delete by Recipient Domain

Table 3-85  deleterecipients - Delete Messages by Recipient Domain

mail3.example.com> deleterecipients

Please select how you would like to delete messages:

1. By recipient host.
2. By Envelope From address.
3. All.

[1]> 1

Please enter the hostname for the messages you wish to delete.

[]> example.com

Are you sure you want to delete all messages being delivered to "example.com"? [N]> Y

Deleting messages, please wait.

100 messages deleted.

Delete by Envelope From Address

Table 3-86  deleterecipients - Delete Messages by Envelope From Address

mail3.example.com> deleterecipients

Please select how you would like to delete messages:

1. By recipient host.
2. By Envelope From address.
3. All.

[1]> 2

Please enter the Envelope From address for the messages you wish to delete.

[]> mailadmin@example.com
Mail Delivery Configuration/Monitoring

Chapter 3      The Commands: Reference Examples

Table 3-86  deleterecipients -Delete Messages by Envelope From Address  (Continued)

Are you sure you want to delete all messages with the Envelope From
address of "mailadmin@example.com"? [N]> Y

Deleting messages, please wait.

100 messages deleted.

Delete All

Table 3-87  deleterecipients - Delete all Message from a Queue

mail3.example.com> deleterecipients

Please select how you would like to delete messages:
1. By recipient host.
2. By Envelope From address.
3. All.
[1]> 1

Are you sure you want to delete all messages in the queue? [N]> Y

Deleting messages, please wait.

1000 messages deleted.

deliveryconfig

Description

Configure mail delivery

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

In the following example, the `deliveryconfig` command is used to set the default interface to “Auto” with “Possible Delivery” enabled. The system-wide maximum outbound message delivery is set to 9000 connections.

**Table 3-88 deliveryconfig**

```text
mail3.example.com> deliveryconfig
```

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Configure mail delivery.

```
[1]> setup
```

Choose the default interface to deliver mail.

1. Auto

2. AnotherPublicNet (192.168.3.1/24: mail4.example.com)

3. Management (192.168.42.42/24: mail3.example.com)

4. PrivateNet (192.168.1.1/24: mail3.example.com)

5. PublicNet (192.168.2.1/24: mail3.example.com)

```
[1]> 1
```

Enable “Possible Delivery” (recommended)? [Y]> y

Please enter the default system wide maximum outbound message delivery concurrency

```
[10000]> 9000
```

```
mail3.example.com>
```
delivernow

Description

Reschedule messages for immediate delivery. Users have the option of selecting a single recipient host, or all messages currently scheduled for delivery.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format

Table 3-89 delivernow

```
mail3.example.com> delivernow

Please choose an option for scheduling immediate delivery.

1. By recipient domain
2. All messages

[1]> 1

Please enter the recipient domain to schedule for delivery.

[]>foo.com

Scheduling all messages to foo.com for delivery.
```

destconfig

Formerly the setgoodtable command. The table is now called the Destination Control Table. Use this table to configure delivery limits for a specified domain.

Using the destconfig Command

The following commands are available within the destconfig submenu:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SETUP</td>
<td>Change global settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEW</td>
<td>Add new limits for a domain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The destconfig command requires the following information for each row in the Destination Controls table.

- Domain (recipient host)
- Maximum simultaneous connections to the domain
- Messages-per-connection limit
- Recipient limit
- System-wide or Virtual Gateway switch
- Enforce limits per MX or domain
- Time period for recipient limit (in minutes)
- Bounce Verification
- Bounce profile to use for the domain

### Sample Destination Control Table

The following table shows entries in a destination control table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-91 Example Destination Control Table Entries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Domain</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlisted domains get their own set of 500 connections with unlimited rcpts/hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail gateways at unlisted domains get up to 500 connections, with unlimited rcpts/hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partner.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All gateways at partner.com will share 10 connections, with 500 rcpts/minute maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.202.101.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying an IP address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Batch Format

The batch format of the `destconfig` command can be used to perform all the functions of the traditional CLI command.

- Creating a new destination control table
  
  `destconfig new <profile> [options]`

- Editing an existing destination control table
  
  `destconfig edit <default|profile> [options]`

- Deleting an existing destination control table
  
  `destconfig delete <profile>`

- Displaying a summary of all destination control entries
  
  `destconfig list`

- Displaying details for one destination or all entries
  
  `destconfig detail <default|profile|all>`

- Deleting all existing destination control table entries
  
  `destconfig clear`

- Import table from a file
  
  `destconfig import <filename>`

- Export table to a file
  
  `destconfig export <filename>`

For the `edit` and `new` batch commands, any or all of the following options may be provided by identifying the value with the variable name and an equals sign. Options not specified will not be modified (if using `edit`) or will be set to default values (if using `new`).

- `concurrency_limit=<int>` - The maximum concurrency for a specific host.
- `concurrency_limit_type=<host|MXIP>` - Maximum concurrency is per host or per MX IP.
- `concurrency_limit_apply=<system|VG>` - Apply maximum concurrency is system wide or by Virtual Gateway(tm).
Example: Creating a new destconfig Entry

In the following example, the current destconfig entries are printed to the screen. Then, a new entry for the domain partner.com is created. The concurrency limit of 100 simultaneous connections and recipient limit of 50 recipients for a 60-minute time period is set for that domain. So, the system will never open more than 100 connections or deliver to more than 50 recipients in a given hour to the domain partner.com. No bounce profile is assigned for this specific domain, and no specific TLS setting is configured. Finally, the changes are printed to confirm and then committed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-92</th>
<th>destconfig example: Configuring the Destination Configuration Table</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

mail3.example.com> destconfig

There are currently 2 entries configured.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Change global settings.
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- DEFAULT - Change the default.
- LIST - Display a summary list of all entries.
- DETAIL - Display details for one destination or all entries.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.
- IMPORT - Import tables from a file.
- EXPORT - Export tables to a file.
Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Change global settings.
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- DEFAULT - Change the default.
- LIST - Display a summary list of all entries.
- DETAIL - Display details for one destination or all entries.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.
- IMPORT - Import tables from a file.
- EXPORT - Export tables to a file.

[>] new

Enter the domain you wish to configure.

[>] partner.com

Do you wish to configure a concurrency limit for partner.com? [Y]> y
Table 3-92  destconfig example: Configuring the Destination Configuration Table

Enter the max concurrency limit for "partner.com".

$ [500]> 100

Do you wish to apply a messages-per-connection limit to this domain? [N]> n

Do you wish to apply a recipient limit to this domain? [N]> y

Enter the number of minutes used to measure the recipient limit.

$ [60]> 60

Enter the max number of recipients per 60 minutes for "partner.com".

$ []> 50

Select how you want to apply the limits for partner.com:
1. One limit applies to the entire domain for partner.com
2. Separate limit for each mail exchanger IP address

$ [1]> 1

Select how the limits will be enforced:
1. System Wide
2. Per Virtual Gateway(tm)

$ [1]> 1

Do you wish to apply a specific TLS setting for this domain? [N]> n

Do you wish to apply a specific bounce verification address tagging setting for this domain? [N]> n
Example: Bounce Profile and TLS Settings

In this example, a new destconfig entry is configured for the domain newpartner.com. TLS connections are required. The example also shows the bounce profile named bouncepr1 (see “Editing the Default Bounce Profile” on page 169) configured to be used for all email delivery to the domain newpartner.com.

Table 3-93  destconfig example: Configuring Bounce Profile and TLS Settings

mail3.example.com> destconfig

There is currently 1 entry configured.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Change global settings.
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- DEFAULT - Change the default.
Table 3-93  destconfig example: Configuring Bounce Profile and TLS Settings

- LIST - Display a summary list of all entries.
- DETAIL - Display details for one destination or all entries.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.
- IMPORT - Import tables from a file.
- EXPORT - Export tables to a file.

[]> new

Enter the domain you wish to configure.

[]> newpartner.com

Do you wish to configure a concurrency limit for newpartner.com? [Y]> n

Do you wish to apply a messages-per-connection limit to this domain? [N]> n

Do you wish to apply a recipient limit to this domain? [N]> n

Do you wish to apply a specific TLS setting for this domain? [N]> y

Do you want to use TLS support?

1. No
2. Preferred
3. Required
4. Preferred(Verify)
5. Required(Verify)

[1]> 3

You have chosen to enable TLS. Please use the 'certconfig' command to ensure that there is a valid certificate configured.
Do you wish to apply a specific bounce verification address tagging setting for this domain? [N]> **y**

Perform bounce verification address tagging? [N]> **y**

Do you wish to apply a specific bounce profile to this domain? [N]> **y**

Please choose a bounce profile to apply:
1. Default
2. New Profile

[1]> **1**

There are currently 2 entries configured.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Change global settings.
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- DEFAULT - Change the default.
- LIST - Display a summary list of all entries.
- DETAIL - Display details for one destination or all entries.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.
- IMPORT - Import tables from a file.
- EXPORT - Export tables to a file.

[>] **detail**
### Table 3-93  
(destconfig example: Configuring Bounce Profile and TLS Settings)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Domain</th>
<th>Rate Limiting</th>
<th>TLS</th>
<th>Bounce Verification</th>
<th>Bounce Profile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>newpartner.com</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Req</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Default)</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>(Default)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enter the domain name to view, or enter DEFAULT to view details for the default, or enter ALL to view details for all:

```plaintext
[]> all
```

newpartner.com

- Maximum messages per connection: Default
- Rate Limiting: Default
- TLS: Required
- Bounce Verification Tagging: On
- Bounce Profile: Default

**Default**

- Rate Limiting:
  - 500 concurrent connections
  - No recipient limit
- Limits applied to entire domain, across all virtual gateways
- TLS: Off
- Bounce Verification Tagging: Off

There are currently 2 entries configured.

```plaintext
[]>
```
Example: Inbound “Shock Absorber”

In this example, another destconfig entry is created to throttle mail to the internal groupware server exchange.example.com. This “shock absorber” entry for your internal server throttles inbound delivery to your internal groupware servers during periods of especially high volume traffic. In this example, the appliance will never open more than ten simultaneous connections or deliver to more than 1000 recipients to the internal groupware server exchange.example.com in any given minute. No bounce profile or TLS setting is configured:

Table 3-94 destconfig example: Inbound “Shock Absorber”

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Change global settings.
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- DEFAULT - Change the default.
- LIST - Display a summary list of all entries.
- DETAIL - Display details for one destination or all entries.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.
- IMPORT - Import tables from a file.
Table 3-94  destconfig example: Inbound “Shock Absorber”

- CLEAR - Remove all entries.

[]> new

Enter the domain you wish to configure.

[]> exchange.example.com

Do you wish to configure a concurrency limit for exchange.example.com? [Y]> y

Enter the max concurrency limit for "exchange.example.com".

[500]> 10

Do you wish to apply a recipient limit to this domain? [N]> y

Enter the number of minutes used to measure the recipient limit.

[60]> 1

Enter the max number of recipients per 1 minutes for "exchange.example.com".

[]> 1000

Select how you want to apply the limits for exchange.example.com:

1. One limit applies to the entire domain for exchange.example.com
2. Separate limit for each mail exchanger IP address

[1]> 1

Select how the limits will be enforced:

1. System Wide
2. Per Virtual Gateway(tm)
Do you wish to apply a specific TLS setting for this domain? [N]> n

Do you wish to apply a specific bounce verification address tagging setting for this domain? [N]> n

Do you wish to apply a specific bounce profile to this domain? [N]> n

There are currently 3 entries configured.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Change global settings.
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- DEFAULT - Change the default.
- LIST - Display a summary list of all entries.
- DETAIL - Display details for one destination or all entries.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.
- IMPORT - Import tables from a file.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.

[1]> 1

mail3.example.com> commit

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

[]> set up shock absorber for inbound mail
Example: Global Settings

In this example, the TLS alert and certificate for TLS connections are configured.

Table 3-95  \texttt{destconfig} - Global Settings

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Change global settings.
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- DEFAULT - Change the default.
- LIST - Display a summary list of all entries.
- DETAIL - Display details for one destination or all entries.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.
- IMPORT - Import tables from a file.
- EXPORT - Export tables to a file.

[>] \texttt{setup}

The "Demo" certificate is currently configured. You may use "Demo", but this will not be secure.

1. partner.com
2. Demo

Please choose the certificate to apply:

[1]> 1

Do you want to send an alert when a required TLS connection fails? [N]> n
hostrate

Description

Monitor activity for a particular host

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format

Example

Table 3-96   hostrate

mail3.example.com> hostrate

Recipient host:

[]> aol.com

Enter the number of seconds between displays.

[10]> 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Host</th>
<th>CrtCncOut</th>
<th>ActvRcp</th>
<th>ActvRcp</th>
<th>DlvRcp</th>
<th>HrdBncRcp</th>
<th>SftBncEvt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>Delta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:38:23</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:38:24</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:38:25</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

^C

Use Control-C to stop the hostrate command.
hoststatus

Description
Get the status of the given hostname.

Usage
Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format
Example

Table 3-97  hoststatus

mail3.example.com> hoststatus

Recipient host:

[ ]> aol.com

Host mail status for: 'aol.com'

Status as of: Fri Aug 8 11:12:00 2003

Host up/down: up

Counters:

Queue

   Soft Bounced Events           0

Completion

   Completed Recipients          1
   Hard Bounced Recipients       1
   DNS Hard Bounces              0
   5XX Hard Bounces              1
   Filter Hard Bounces           0
   Expired Hard Bounces          0
   Other Hard Bounces            0
   Delivered Recipients          0
   Deleted Recipients            0

Gauges:

Queue

   Active Recipients             0
   Unattempted Recipients        0
Table 3-97   *hoststatus* (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>At tempted Recipients</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Current Outbound Connections</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pending Outbound Connections</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Oldest Message         No Messages

Last Activity          Fri Aug 8 11:04:24 2003

Ordered IP addresses: (expiring at Fri Aug 8 11:34:24 2003)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preference</th>
<th>IPs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>64.12.138.89 64.12.138.120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>64.12.138.89 152.163.224.122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>64.12.138.89 64.12.136.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>64.12.138.57 205.188.156.122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>64.12.138.89 64.12.136.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>64.12.138.89 64.12.136.154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>64.12.136.121 64.12.137.121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>64.12.138.120 64.12.137.152</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MX Records:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preference</th>
<th>TTL</th>
<th>Hostname</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>52m24s</td>
<td>mailin-01.mx.aol.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>52m24s</td>
<td>mailin-02.mx.aol.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>52m24s</td>
<td>mailin-03.mx.aol.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>52m24s</td>
<td>mailin-04.mx.aol.com</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Last 5XX Error:

----------

550 REQUESTED ACTION NOT TAKEN: DNS FAILURE

(at Fri Aug 8 11:04:25 2003)
oldmessage

Description

Displays the mid and headers of the oldest non-quarantine message on the system.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a commit.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

In the following example, an older messages are displayed:

```
mail3.example.com> oldmessage

MID 9: 1 hour 5 mins 35 secs old
```
Table 3-98 oldmessage (Continued)

Received: from test02.com ([172.19.0.109])
by test02.com with SMTP; 14 Feb 2007 22:11:37 -0800

From: user123@test02.com
To: 4031@example.com
Subject: Testing
Message-Id: <20070215061136.68297.16346@test02.com

rate

Description

Monitor message throughput

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

*Table 3-99*  
`rate`

```
mail3.example.com> rate
```

Enter the number of seconds between displays.

```
[10]> 1
```

Hit Ctrl-C to return to the main prompt.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Connections</th>
<th>Recipients</th>
<th>Recipients</th>
<th>Queue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In</td>
<td>Out</td>
<td>Received</td>
<td>Delta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37:13</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>41708833</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37:14</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>41708841</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37:15</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>41708848</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37:16</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>41708852</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37:17</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>41708858</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37:18</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>41708871</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37:19</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>41708881</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37:21</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>41708893</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```

**redirectrecipients**

**Description**

Redirect all messages to another relay host.

**Warning**

Redirecting messages to a receiving domain that has /dev/null as its destination results in the loss of messages. The CLI does not display a warning if you redirect mail to such a domain. Check the SMTP route for the receiving domain before redirecting messages.
Warning

Redirecting recipients to a host or IP address that is not prepared to accept large volumes of SMTP mail from this host will cause messages to bounce and possibly result in the loss of mail.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format

The batch format of the redirectrecipients command can be used to perform all the functions of the traditional CLI command.

- Redirects all mail to another host name or IP address

```
redirectrecipients host <hostname>
```

Example

The following example redirects all mail to the example2.com host.

```
mail3.example.com> redirectrecipients

Please enter the hostname or IP address of the machine you want to send all mail to.

[]> example2.com

WARNING: redirecting recipients to a host or IP address that is not prepared to accept large volumes of SMTP mail from this host will cause messages to bounce and possibly result in the loss of mail.

Are you sure you want to redirect all mail in the queue to 'example2.com'? [N]> y

Redirecting messages, please wait.

246 recipients redirected.
resetcounters

Description

Reset all of the counters in the system

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

Table 3-100  resetcounters

mail3.example.com> resetcounters

Counters reset: Mon Jan 01 12:00:01 2003

removemessage

Description

Attempts to safely remove a message for a given message ID.
The removemessage command can only remove messages that are in the work queue, retry queue, or a destination queue. Note that depending on the state of the system, valid and active messages may not be in any of those queues.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-101  removemessage

example.com> removemessage 1

MID 1: 19 secs old

Received: from example2.com ([172.16.0.102])
    by test02.com with SMTP; 01 Mar 2007 19:50:41 -0800
From: user123@test02.com
To: 9526@example.com
Subject: Testing
Message-Id: <20070302035041.67424.53212@test02.com>

Remove this message? [N]> y

showmessage

Description

Shows the message and message body for a specified message ID.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-102 showmessage

example.com> showmessage

MID 9: 1 hour 5 mins 35 secs old

Received: from example2.com([172.19.0.109])
  by test02.com with SMTP; 14 Feb 2007 22:11:37 -0800
From: user123@test02.com
To: 4031@example.com
Subject: Testing
Message-Id: <20070215061136.68297.16346@test02.com>

This is the message body.

showrecipients

Description

Show messages from the queue by recipient host, Envelope From address, or all messages.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does support a batch format.

Batch Format

The batch format of the showrecipients command can be used to perform all the functions of the traditional CLI command.

- Find messages by a recipient host name
  
  showrecipients host <hostname>
• Find messages by an envelope from address

   `showrecipients [sender_options] <sender_email>`

   The following sender_option is available:
   `--match-case` Case-sensitive matching for the username portion of an address.

• Find all messages

   `showrecipients all`

**Example**

The following example shows messages in the queue for all recipient hosts.

```
mail3.example.com> showrecipients
```

Please select how you would like to show messages:

1. By recipient host.
2. By Envelope From address.
3. All.

[1]> 3

Showing messages, please wait.

```
MID/ Bytes/ Sender/ Subject
[RID] [Atmps] Recipient
1527  1230 user123456@ironport.com Testing
[0]   [0]       9554@example.com
1522  1230 user123456@ironport.com Testing
[0]   [0]       3059@example.com
1529  1230 user123456@ironport.com Testing
[0]   [0]       7284@example.com
```
The status command is used to display the system status of your appliance. Using the ‘detail’ option (status detail) displays additional information.

**Usage**

- **Commit**: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
- **Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
- **Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

```plaintext
+-----+-----+---------------+-------------------+
|     |     | user123456@ironport.com Testing |
| 1530| 1230| 8243@example.com |
+-----+-----+---------------+-------------------+
| [0] | [0] | 1820@example.com |
+-----+-----+---------------+-------------------+
| 1531| 1230| 9595@example.com |
+-----+-----+---------------+-------------------+
| 1510| 1230| 8778@example.com |
+-----+-----+---------------+-------------------+
| 1535| 1230| 1703@example.com |
+-----+-----+---------------+-------------------+
| 1533| 1230| 3052@example.com |
+-----+-----+---------------+-------------------+
| 1536| 1230| 511@example.com  |
+-----+-----+---------------+-------------------+
```
Example

Table 3-103  status

example.mail3.com> status

Enter "status detail" for more information.

Status as of: Tue Aug 02 14:03:53 2005 PDT
Up since: Tue Aug 02 10:27:22 2005 PDT (3h 36m 31s)
Last counter reset: Tue Aug 02 10:24:51 2005 PDT
System status: Online
Oldest Message: No Messages
Feature - IronPort Anti-Spam: 25 days
Feature - Receiving: 25 days
Feature - Sophos: 25 days
Feature - Outbreak Filters: 25 days
Feature - Central Mgmt: 29 days

Counters:       Reset   Uptime   Lifetime
Receiving
   Messages Received  0       0       2
   Recipients Received 0       0       2
Rejection
   Rejected Recipients 1       1       1
   Dropped Messages 0       0       0
Queue
   Soft Bounced Events 0       0       0
Completion
   Completed Recipients 0       0       2
Current IDs
**tophosts**

**Description**

To get immediate information about the email queue and determine if a particular recipient host has delivery problems — such as a queue buildup — use the `tophosts` command. The `tophosts` command returns a list of the top 20 recipient hosts in the queue. The list can be sorted by a number of different statistics, including active recipients, connections out, delivered recipients, soft bounced events, and hard bounced recipients.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-104  tophosts

```
mail3.example.com> tophosts

Sort results by:

1. Active Recipients
2. Connections Out
3. Delivered Recipients
4. Soft Bounced Events
5. Hard Bounced Recipients
[1]> 1


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#</th>
<th>Recipient</th>
<th>Host</th>
<th>Recip Out</th>
<th>Recip. Bounced</th>
<th>Bounced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>aol.com</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>hotmail.com</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>yahoo.com</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>excite.com</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>msn.com</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

mail3.example.com>
```

topin

Description

Display the top hosts by number of incoming connections

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’. 
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
### Example

**Table 3-105**  
*topin*

```
mail3.example.com> topin

Status as of: Sat Aug 23 21:50:54 2003

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#</th>
<th>Remote hostname</th>
<th>Remote IP addr.</th>
<th>listener</th>
<th>Conn. In</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain01.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.2</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain01.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.2</td>
<td>Incoming02</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain03.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.4</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain04.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.5</td>
<td>Incoming02</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain05.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.6</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain06.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.7</td>
<td>Incoming02</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain07.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.8</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain08.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.9</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain09.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.10</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain10.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.11</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain11.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.12</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain12.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.13</td>
<td>Incoming02</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain13.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.14</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain14.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.15</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain15.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.16</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain16.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.17</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain17.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.18</td>
<td>Incoming01</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>mail.remotedomain18.com</td>
<td>172.16.0.19</td>
<td>Incoming02</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
**unsubscribe**

**Description**

Update the global unsubscribe list

**Usage**

**Commit**: This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

In this example, the address \texttt{user@example.net} is added to the Global Unsubscribe list, and the feature is configured to hard bounce messages. Messages sent to this address will be bounced; the appliance will bounce the message immediately prior to delivery.

```
Table 3-106 unsubscribe

mail3.example.com> unsubscribe

Global Unsubscribe is enabled. Action: drop.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new entry.
- IMPORT - Import entries from a file.
- SETUP - Configure general settings.

[>] new

Enter the unsubscribe key to add. Partial addresses such as

"@example.com" or "user@" are allowed, as are IP addresses. Partial hostnames such as "0.example.com" are allowed.

[>] user@example.net
```
Chapter 3  The Commands: Reference Examples

Mail Delivery Configuration/Monitoring

Table 3-106  unsubscribe (Continued)

Email Address 'user@example.net' added.

Global Unsubscribe is enabled.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- PRINT - Display all entries.
- IMPORT - Import entries from a file.
- EXPORT - Export all entries to a file.
- SETUP - Configure general settings.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.

[1]> setup

Do you want to enable the Global Unsubscribe feature? [Y]> y

Would you like matching messages to be dropped or bounced?
1. Drop
2. Bounce

[1]> 2

Global Unsubscribe is enabled. Action: bounce.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- PRINT - Display all entries.
- IMPORT - Import entries from a file.
Table 3-106  unsubscribe (Continued)

- EXPORT - Export all entries to a file.
- SETUP - Configure general settings.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.

mail3.example.com> commit

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

[]> Added username “user@example.net” to global unsubscribe

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT

workqueue

Description

Display and/or alter work queue pause status

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-107  workqueue - Manually Pausing the Work Queue

mail3.example.com> workqueue

Status:  Operational
Messages:  1243

Manually pause work queue?  This will only affect unprocessed messages.  [N]> y

Reason for pausing work queue:

[]> checking LDAP server

Status:  Paused by admin: checking LDAP server
Messages:  1243

Note

Entering a reason is optional. If you do not enter a reason, the system logs the reason as “operator paused.”

In this example, the work queue is resumed:

Table 3-108  workqueue - Resuming a Paused Work Queue

mail3.example.com> workqueue

Status:  Paused by admin: checking LDAP server
Messages:  1243

Resume the work queue?  [Y]> y

Status:  Operational
Messages:  1243
Networking Configuration / Network Tools

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- etherconfig
- interfaceconfig
- netstat
- nslookup
- ping
- routeconfig
- setgateway
- sethostname
- smtproutes
- sslconfig
- telnet
- traceroute

etherconfig

Description

Configure Ethernet settings, including media settings, NIC pairing, VLAN configuration, and DSR configuration.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example of Editing Media Settings

Table 3-109  
etherconfig -Editing Media Settings

mail3.example.com> etherconfig

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- MEDIA - View and edit ethernet media settings.
- PAIRING - View and configure NIC Pairing.
- VLAN - View and configure VLANs.
- LOOPBACK - View and configure Loopback.

[>] media

Ethernet interfaces:
1. Data 1 (Autoselect: <100baseTX full-duplex>) 00:06:5b:f3:ba:6d
2. Data 2 (Autoselect: <100baseTX full-duplex>) 00:06:5b:f3:ba:6e
3. Management (Autoselect: <100baseTX full-duplex>) 00:02:b3:c7:a2:da

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- EDIT - Edit an ethernet interface.

[>] edit

Enter the name or number of the ethernet interface you wish to edit.

[>] 2

Please choose the Ethernet media options for the Data 2 interface.
1. Autoselect
2. 10baseT/UTP half-duplex
3. 10baseT/UTP full-duplex
4. 100baseTX half-duplex
5. 100baseTX full-duplex
Table 3-109  etherconfig (Continued)-Editing Media Settings (Continued)

6. 1000baseTX half-duplex
7. 1000baseTX full-duplex

[1]> 5

Ethernet interfaces:
1. Data 1 (Autoselect: <100baseTX full-duplex>) 00:06:5b:f3:ba:6d
2. Data 2 (100baseTX full-duplex: <100baseTX full-duplex>)
   00:06:5b:f3:ba:6e
3. Management (Autoselect: <100baseTX full-duplex>) 00:02:b3:c7:a2:da

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- EDIT - Edit an ethernet interface.

[1]>

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- MEDIA - View and edit ethernet media settings.
- PAIRING - View and configure NIC Pairing.
- VLAN - View and configure VLANs.
- LOOPBACK - View and configure Loopback.

[1]>
Enabling NIC Pairing via the etherconfig Command

Table 3-110  etherconfig - Enabling NIC Pairing

mail3.example.com> etherconfig

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- MEDIA - View and edit ethernet media settings.
- PAIRING - View and configure NIC Pairing.
- VLAN - View and configure VLANs.
- LOOPBACK - View and configure Loopback.

[]> pairing

Paired interfaces:

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new pairing.

[]> new

Please enter a name for this pair (Ex: "Pair 1"): 

[]> Pair 1

1. Data 1
2. Data 2

Enter the name or number of the primary ethernet interface you wish bind to.

[]> 1

Paired interfaces:
1. Pair 1: 
   Primary (Data 1) Active, Link is up
Using the failover Subcommand for NIC Pairing

In this example, a manual failover is issued, forcing the Data 2 interface to become the primary interface. Note that you must issue the `status` sub-command to see the change in the CLI.

```plaintext
Table 3-111    etherconfig - Issuing a Manual Failover Command

mail3.example.com> etherconfig
```

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- MEDIA - View and edit ethernet media settings.
- PAIRING - View and configure NIC Pairing.
- VLAN - View and configure VLANs.
- LOOPBACK - View and configure Loopback.

```plaintext
[1]> pairing
```

Paired interfaces:
1. Pair 1:
   - Primary (Data 1) Active, Link is up
   - Backup (Data 2) Standby, Link is up

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- FAILOVER - Manually failover to other port.
- DELETE - Delete a pairing.
Table 3-111  etherconfig - Issuing a Manual Failover Command  (Continued)

- STATUS - Refresh status.

[]> failover

Paired interfaces:
1. Pair 1:
   Primary (Data 1) Active, Link is up
   Backup (Data 2) Standby, Link is up

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- FAILOVER - Manually failover to other port.
- DELETE - Delete a pairing.
- STATUS - Refresh status.

[]> status

Paired interfaces:
1. Pair 1:
   Primary (Data 1) Standby, Link is up
   Backup (Data 2) Active, Link is up

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- FAILOVER - Manually failover to other port.
- DELETE - Delete a pairing.
- STATUS - Refresh status.

[]>

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- MEDIA - View and edit ethernet media settings.
- PAIRING - View and configure NIC Pairing.
- VLAN - View and configure VLANs.
Creating a New VLAN via the etherconfig Command

In this example, two VLANs are created (named VLAN 31 and VLAN 34) on the Data 1 port:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-112</th>
<th>etherconfig - Creating a New VLAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mail3.example.com&gt; etherconfig</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose the operation you want to perform:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- MEDIA - View and edit ethernet media settings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- PAIRING - View and configure NIC Pairing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- VLAN - View and configure VLANs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- LOOPBACK - View and configure Loopback.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1]&gt; vlan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLAN interfaces:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose the operation you want to perform:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- NEW - Create a new VLAN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1]&gt; new</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLAN tag ID for the interface (Ex: &quot;34&quot;):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1]&gt; 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter the name or number of the ethernet interface you wish bind to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Data 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Data 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1]&gt; 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3-112  etherconfig - Creating a New VLAN  (Continued)

VLAN interfaces:
1. VLAN  34 (Data 1)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new VLAN.
- EDIT - Edit a VLAN.
- DELETE - Delete a VLAN.

[>] new

VLAN tag ID for the interface (Ex: "34"):
[>] 31

Enter the name or number of the ethernet interface you wish bind to:
1. Data 1
2. Data 2
3. Management
[1] > 1

VLAN interfaces:
1. VLAN  31 (Data 1)
2. VLAN  34 (Data 1)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new VLAN.
- EDIT - Edit a VLAN.
- DELETE - Delete a VLAN.

[>]
Enabling the Loopback Interface via the etherconfig Command

Once enabled, the loopback interface is treated like any other interface (e.g. Data 1):

```
Table 3-113   etherconfig Enabling the Loopback Interface

mail3.example.com> etherconfig

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- MEDIA - View and edit ethernet media settings.
- PAIRING - View and configure NIC Pairing.
- VLAN - View and configure VLANs.
- LOOPBACK - View and configure Loopback.

[]> loopback

Currently configured loopback interface:
```

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- ENABLE - Enable Loopback Interface.

[]> enable

Currently configured loopback interface:

1. Loopback
interfaceconfig

Description

Configure the interface. You can create, edit, or delete interfaces. You can enable FTP, change an IP address, and configure Ethernet IP addresses.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format

The batch format of the interfaceconfig command can be used to perform all the functions of the traditional CLI command.

- Creating a new interface

interfaceconfig new <name>

<ethernet interface>

<hostname>

--ip=IPv4 Address/Netmask
Deleting an interface

```
interfaceconfig delete <name>
```

FTP is available only on IPv4.
Example: Configuring an Interface

Table 3-114  interfaceconfig Configuring an Interface

mail3.example.com> interfaceconfig

Currently configured interfaces:

1. Data 1 (192.168.1.1/24 on Data1: mail3.example.com)
2. Data 2 (192.168.2.1/24 on Data2: mail3.example.com)
3. Management (192.168.42.42/24 on Management: mail3.example.com)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new interface.
- EDIT - Modify an interface.
- GROUPS - Define interface groups.
- DELETE - Remove an interface.

[]> edit

Enter the number of the interface you wish to edit.

[]> 1

IP interface name (Ex: "InternalNet"):

[Data 1]>

Would you like to configure an IPv4 address for this interface (y/n)? [Y]>

IPV4 Address (Ex: 192.168.1.2 ):

[192.168.1.1]>

Netmask (Ex: '24", "255.255.255.0" or "0xffffffff"):

[0xffffffff]>
Would you like to configure an IPv6 address for this interface (y/n)? [N]> [1]

Ethernet interface:
1. Data 1
2. Data 2
3. Management
[1]>

Hostname:
[mail3.example.com]>

Do you want to enable Telnet on this interface? [Y]> n

Do you want to enable SSH on this interface? [Y]> n

Do you want to enable FTP on this interface? [N]>

Do you want to enable Cluster Communication Service on this interface? [N]>

Do you want to enable HTTP on this interface? [Y]> y

Which port do you want to use for HTTP?
[80]> 80

Do you want to enable HTTPS on this interface? [Y]> y

Which port do you want to use for HTTPS?
Do you want to enable Spam Quarantine HTTP on this interface? [N]

Do you want to enable Spam Quarantine HTTPS on this interface? [N]

Do you want to enable RSA Enterprise Manager Integration on this interface? [N]>

The "Demo" certificate is currently configured. You may use "Demo", but this will not be secure. To assure privacy, run "certconfig" first.

Both HTTP and HTTPS are enabled for this interface, should HTTP requests redirect to the secure service? [Y]>

Currently configured interfaces:
1. Data 1 (192.168.1.1/24 on Data 1: mail3.example.com)
2. Data 2 (192.168.2.1/24 on Data 2: mail3.example.com)
3. Management (192.168.42.42/24 on Management: mail3.example.com)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new interface.
- EDIT - Modify an interface.
- GROUPS - Define interface groups.
- DELETE - Remove an interface.
[>>

mail3.example.com> commit

Please enter some comments describing your changes:
[> enabled HTTP, HTTPS for Data 1

Table 3-114 interfaceconfig Configuring an Interface (Continued)

[443]> 443
Table 3-114  interfaceconfig Configuring an Interface (Continued)

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n
Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT

Example: Changing the Spam Quarantine URL

The following example shows a change in the Spam Quarantine URL.

Table 3-115  Changing the Spam Quarantine URL

mail3.example.com]>interfaceconfig

Currently configured interfaces:
1. Data 1 (192.168.1.1/24 on Data1: mail3.example.com)
2. Data 2 (192.168.2.1/24 on Data2: mail3.example.com)
3. Management (192.168.42.42/24 on Management: mail3.example.com)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new interface.
- EDIT - Modify an interface.
- GROUPS - Define interface groups.
- DELETE - Remove an interface.
[]> edit

Enter the number of the interface you wish to edit.
[]> 3

IP interface name (Ex: "InternalNet"):
[Management]>
[ ... ]

Do you want to enable Spam Quarantine HTTP on this interface? [Y]>
Table 3-115  Changing the Spam Quarantine URL (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Which port do you want to use for Spam Quarantine HTTP?</td>
<td>[82]&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to enable Spam Quarantine HTTPS on this interface? [Y]&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which port do you want to use for Spam Quarantine HTTPS?</td>
<td>[83]&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have not entered an HTTPS certificate. To assure privacy, run &quot;certconfig&quot; first.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You may use the demo, but this will not be secure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you really wish to use a demo certificate? [Y]&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both HTTP and HTTPS are enabled for this interface, should HTTP requests redirect to the secure service? [Y]&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both Spam Quarantine HTTP and IronPort Spam Quarantine HTTPS are enabled for this interface, should Spam Quarantine HTTP requests redirect to the secure service? [Y]&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want Management as the default interface for Spam Quarantine? [Y]&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to use a custom base URL in your Spam Quarantine email notifications? [N]&gt; y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enter the custom base URL (Ex: "http://isq.example.url:81/"

[]> http://ISQ.example.com:82/
You have edited the interface you are currently logged into. Are you sure you want to change it? [Y]> y

Currently configured interfaces:

1. Data 1 (192.168.1.1/24 on Data1: mail3.example.com)
2. Data 2 (192.168.2.1/24 on Data2: mail3.example.com)
3. Management (192.168.42.42/24 on Management: mail3.example.com)

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **NEW** - Create a new interface.
- **EDIT** - Modify an interface.
- **GROUPS** - Define interface groups.
- **DELETE** - Remove an interface.

## nslookup

### Description

Use the `nslookup` command to check the DNS functionality.

The `nslookup` command can confirm that the appliance is able to reach and resolve hostnames and IP addresses from a working DNS (domain name service) server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Query Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>the host's Internet address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNAME</td>
<td>the canonical name for an alias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MX</td>
<td>the mail exchanger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NS</td>
<td>the name server for the named zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTR</td>
<td>the hostname if the query is an Internet address, otherwise the pointer to other information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOA</td>
<td>the domain's “start-of-authority” information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TXT</td>
<td>the text information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
netstat

Description

Use the `netstat` command to display network connections (both incoming and outgoing), routing tables, and a number of network interface statistics. Note that this version will not support all arguments. Specifically, you cannot use `-a`, `-A`, `-g`, `-m`, `-M`, `-N`, `-s`. The command was designed to be run in interactive mode, so that you may enter `netstat`, then choose from five options to report on. You can also specify the interface to listen on and the interval for display.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format
Example

Table 3-117 netstat

Choose the information you want to display:
1. List of active sockets.
2. State of network interfaces.
3. Contents of routing tables.
4. Size of the listen queues.
5. Packet traffic information.

[1]> 2

Select the ethernet interface whose state you wish to display:
1. Data 1
2. Data 2
3. Management
4. ALL

[1]> 1

Show the number of bytes in and out? [N]>

Show the number of dropped packets? [N]>

y

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Mtu</th>
<th>Network</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Ipkts</th>
<th>Ierrs</th>
<th>Opkts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Data 1</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>197.19.1/24</td>
<td>example.com</td>
<td>30536</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example.com>

ping

Description

The ping command allows you to test connectivity to a network host from the appliance.
Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto). This command requires access to the local file system.

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-118  ping

mail3.example.com> ping

Which interface do you want to send the pings from?

1. Auto
2. Management (192.168.42.42/24: mail3.example.com)
3. PrivateNet (192.168.1.1/24: mail3.example.com)
4. PublicNet (192.168.2.1/24: mail3.example.com)

[1]> 1

Please enter the host you wish to ping.

[1]> anotherhost.example.com

Press Ctrl-C to stop.

PING anotherhost.example.com (x.x.x.x): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=1.421 ms
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.126 ms
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.118 ms
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.115 ms
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=0.139 ms
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=5 ttl=64 time=0.125 ms
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=6 ttl=64 time=0.124 ms
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=7 ttl=64 time=0.122 ms
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=8 ttl=64 time=0.126 ms
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=9 ttl=64 time=0.133 ms
64 bytes from 10.19.0.31: icmp_seq=10 ttl=64 time=0.115 ms
^C
routeconfig

Description

The routeconfig command allows you to create, edit, and delete static routes for TCP/IP traffic. By default, traffic is routed through the default gateway set with the setgateway command. However, AsyncOS allows specific routing based on destination.

Routes consist of a nickname (for future reference), a destination, and a gateway. A gateway (the next hop) is an IP address such as 10.1.1.2. The destination can be one of two things:

- an IP address, such as 192.168.14.32
- a subnet using CIDR notation. For example, 192.168.5.0/24 means the entire class C network from 192.168.5.0 to 192.168.5.255.

For IPv6 addresses, you can use the following formats:

- 2620:101:2004:4202::
- 2620:101:2004:4202::23
- 2620:101:2004:4202::/64

The command presents a list of all currently configured TCP/IP routes for you to select from using the edit and delete subcommands.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.

Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format

The batch format of the smtproutes command can be used to perform all the functions of the traditional CLI command. You can choose whether to use IPv4 or IPv6 addresses for the route.

--- anotherhost.example.com ping statistics ---

11 packets transmitted, 11 packets received, 0% packet loss

round-trip min/avg/max/stddev = 0.115/0.242/1.421/0.373 ms

^C

Table 3-118 | ping (Continued)

--- anotherhost.example.com ping statistics ---

11 packets transmitted, 11 packets received, 0% packet loss

round-trip min/avg/max/stddev = 0.115/0.242/1.421/0.373 ms

^C
• Creating a static route:

```
routeconfig new 4|6 <name> <destination_address> <gateway_ip>
```

**Table 3-119 routeconfig Arguments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>The name of the route.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destination_address</td>
<td>The IP or CIDR address to match on for outgoing IP traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gateway_ip</td>
<td>The IP address to send this traffic to.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Editing a static route:

```
routeconfig edit 4|6 <name> <new_name> <destination_address> <gateway_ip>
```

• Deleting a static route:

```
routeconfig delete 4|6 <name>
```

• Deleting all static routes:

```
routeconfig clear [4|6]
```

• Printing a list of static routes:

```
routeconfig print [4|6]
```
Example

mail3.example.com> routeconfig

Configure routes for:

1. IPv4
2. IPv6

[1]> new

Please create a name for the route:

[1]> EuropeNet

Please enter the destination IPv4 address to match on.
CIDR addresses such as 192.168.42.0/24 are also allowed.

[1]> 192.168.12.0/24

Please enter the gateway IP address for traffic to 192.168.12.0/24:


Currently configured routes:

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new route.
- EDIT - Modify a route.
- DELETE - Remove a route.
- CLEAR - Clear all entries.

[]>

mail3.example.com> routeconfig

Configure routes for:

1. IPv4
2. IPv6

[1]> 2

Currently configured routes:

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new route.

[]> new

Please create a name for the route:

[]> EuropeIPv6Net
Please enter the destination IPv6 address to match on.
CIDR addresses such as 2001:db8::/32 are also allowed.


Please enter the gateway IP address for traffic to 2620:101:2004:4202::/6:

[>] 2620:101:2004:4202::23

Currently configured routes:
   2620:101:2004:4202::23

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new route.
- EDIT - Modify a route.
- DELETE - Remove a route.
- CLEAR - Clear all entries.

[>]

**setgateway**

**Description**

The `setgateway` command configures the default next-hop intermediary through which packets should be routed. Alternate (non-default) gateways are configured using the `routeconfig` command.

**Usage**

**Commit**: This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-120  setgateway

mail3.example.com> setgateway

Warning: setting an incorrect default gateway may cause the current connection to be interrupted when the changes are committed.

Enter new default gateway:

[10.1.1.1]> 192.168.20.1

mail3.example.com> commit

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

[]> changed default gateway to 192.168.20.1

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT

sethostname

Description

The hostname is used to identify the system at the CLI prompt. You must enter a fully-qualified hostname. The sethostname command sets the name of the Email Security appliance. The new hostname does not take effect until you issue the commit command.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-121  sethostname

oldname.example.com> sethostname

[oldname.example.com]> mail3.example.com

oldname.example.com>

For the hostname change to take effect, you must enter the commit command. After you have successfully committed the hostname change, the new name appears in the CLI prompt:

Table 3-122

oldname.example.com> commit

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

[]> Changed System Hostname

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT

The new hostname appears in the prompt as follows:

mail3.example.com>

smtproutes

Description

Set up permanent domain redirections.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.
Batch Format

The batch format of the `smtproutes` command can be used to perform all the functions of the traditional CLI command.

- Creating a new SMTP route
  
  ```
  smtproutes new <source> <destination> [destination] [destination] [...]
  ```

- Deleting an existing SMTP route
  
  ```
  smtproutes delete <source>
  ```

- Clear a listing of SMTP routes
  
  ```
  smtproutes clear
  ```

- Print a listing of SMTP routes
  
  ```
  smtproutes print
  ```

- Import a listing of SMTP routes
  
  ```
  smtproutes import <filenames>
  ```

- Export a listing of SMTP routes
  
  ```
  smtproutes export <filenames>
  ```

Example

In the following example, the `smtproutes` command is used to construct a route (mapping) for the domain `example.com` to `relay1.example.com`, `relay2.example.com`, and `backup-relay.example.com`. Use `/pri=#` to specify a destination priority. THE # should be from 0-65535, with larger numbers indicating decreasing priority. If unspecified, the priority defaults to 0.

(Note that you may have constructed the same mapping during the `systemsetup` command when you configured the InboundMail public listener.)

**Table 3-123  smtproutes**

```
mail3.example.com> smtproutes
```

There are no routes configured.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
Table 3-123  smtproutes

- NEW - Create a new route.
- IMPORT - Import new routes from a file.

[]> new

Enter the domain for which you want to set up a permanent route.
Partial hostnames such as "*.example.com" are allowed.
Use 'ALL' for the default route.

[]> example.com

Enter the destination hosts, separated by commas, which you want mail
for example.com to be delivered.
Enter USEDNS by itself to use normal DNS resolution for this route.
Enter /dev/null by itself if you wish to discard the mail.
Enclose in square brackets to force resolution via address (A)
records, ignoring any MX records.

[]> relay1.example.com/pri=10, relay2.example.com,
backup-relay.example.com

Mapping for example.com to relay1.example.com, relay2.example.com,
backup-relay.example.com/pri=10 created.

There are currently 1 routes configured.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new route.
- EDIT - Edit destinations of an existing route.
- DELETE - Remove a route.
- PRINT - Display all routes.
- IMPORT - Import new routes from a file.
sslconfig

Description

Configure SSL settings for the appliance

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
**Example**

mail3.example.com> `sslconfig`

sslconfig settings:

GUI HTTPS method: sslv3tlsv1

GUI HTTPS ciphers: RC4-SHA:RC4-MD5:ALL

Inbound SMTP method: sslv3tlsv1

Inbound SMTP ciphers: RC4-SHA:RC4-MD5:ALL

Outbound SMTP method: sslv3tlsv1

Outbound SMTP ciphers: RC4-SHA:RC4-MD5:ALL

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- GUI - Edit GUI HTTPS ssl settings.
- INBOUND - Edit Inbound SMTP ssl settings.
- OUTBOUND - Edit Outbound SMTP ssl settings.
- VERIFY - Verify and show ssl cipher list.

[]> gui

Enter the GUI HTTPS ssl method you want to use.

1. SSL v2.
2. SSL v3
3. TLS v1
4. SSL v2 and v3
5. SSL v3 and TLS v1
6. SSL v2, v3 and TLS v1

[5]> 6

Enter the GUI HTTPS ssl cipher you want to use.

[RC4-SHA:RC4-MD5:ALL]>
Choose the operation you want to perform:
- **GUI** - Edit GUI HTTPS ssl settings.
- **INBOUND** - Edit Inbound SMTP ssl settings.
- **OUTBOUND** - Edit Outbound SMTP ssl settings.
- **VERIFY** - Verify and show ssl cipher list.

[] > **inbound**

Enter the inbound SMTP ssl method you want to use.
1. SSL v2.
2. SSL v3
3. TLS v1
4. SSL v2 and v3
5. SSL v3 and TLS v1
6. SSL v2, v3 and TLS v1

[5] > **6**

Enter the inbound SMTP ssl cipher you want to use.

[RC4-SHA:RC4-MD5:ALL]>
telnet

Description

Connect to a remote host

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto). This command requires access to the local file system.

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-124 telnet

mail3.example.com> telnet

Please select which interface you want to telnet from.

1. Auto
2. Management (192.168.42.42/24: mail3.example.com)
3. PrivateNet (192.168.1.1/24: mail3.example.com)
4. PublicNet (192.168.2.1/24: mail3.example.com)

[1]> 3

Enter the remote hostname or IP.

[>] 193.168.1.1

Enter the remote port.

[25]> 25

Trying 193.168.1.1...

Connected to 193.168.1.1.

Escape character is '^]'.

traceroute

Description

Use the traceroute command to test connectivity to a network host from the appliance and debug routing issues with network hops.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto). This command requires access to the local file system.
**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

*Table 3-125 traceroutes*

```bash
mail3.example.com> traceroute

Which interface do you want to trace from?
1. Auto
2. Management (192.168.42.42/24: mail3.example.com)
3. PrivateNet (192.168.1.1/24: mail3.example.com)
4. PublicNet (192.168.2.1/24: mail3.example.com)

[1]> 1

Please enter the host to which you want to trace the route.

[<>] 10.1.1.1

Press Ctrl-C to stop.

traceroute to 10.1.1.1 (10.1.1.1), 64 hops max, 44 byte packets

1 gateway (192.168.0.1) 0.202 ms 0.173 ms 0.161 ms
2 hostname (10.1.1.1) 0.298 ms 0.302 ms 0.291 ms

mail3.example.com>
```
Outbreak Filters

This section contains the following CLI commands:
- `outbreakconfig`
- `outbreakflush`
- `outbreakstatus`
- `outbreakupdate`

outbreakconfig

Description

Use the `outbreakconfig` command to configure the Outbreak Filter feature. You perform the following actions using this command:
- Enable Outbreak Filters globally
- Enable Adaptive Rules scanning
- Set a maximum size for files to scan (note that you are entering the size in bytes)
- Enable alerts for the Outbreak Filter
- Enable Logging of URLs

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

```
mail.example.com> outbreakconfig
Outbreak Filters: Enabled
Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Change Outbreak Filters settings.
{}> setup
Outbreak Filters: Enabled
Would you like to use Outbreak Filters? [Y]>
Outbreak Filters enabled.

Outbreak Filter alerts are sent when outbreak rules cross the threshold (go above or back down below), meaning that new messages of certain types could be quarantined or will no longer be quarantined, respectively.

Would you like to receive Outbreak Filter alerts? [N]>
What is the largest size message Outbreak Filters should scan?
```
Do you want to use adaptive rules to compute the threat level of messages? [Y]>

Logging of URLs is currently disabled.

Do you wish to enable logging of URL's? [N]> Y

Logging of URLs has been enabled.

The Outbreak Filters feature is now globally enabled on the system. You must use the ‘policyconfig’ command in the CLI or the Email Security Manager in the GUI to enable Outbreak Filters for the desired Incoming and Outgoing Mail Policies.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Change Outbreak Filters settings.

\[
\text{outbreakflush}
\]

\textbf{Description}

Clear the cached Outbreak Rules.

\textbf{Usage}

\textbf{Commit}: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

\textbf{Cluster Management}: This command is restricted to machine mode.

\textbf{Batch Command}: This command does not support a batch format.

\textbf{Example}

\textit{Table 3-126} \textbf{outbreakflush}

\[
\text{mail3.example.com> outbreakflush}
\]

Warning - This command removes the current set of Outbreak Filter Rules, leaving your network exposed until the next rule download. Run "outbreakupdate force" command to immediately download Outbreak Filter Rules.

Are you sure that you want to clear the current rules? [N]> y

Cleared the current rules.
Table 3-126  outbreakFlush (Continued)

mail3.example.com>
outbreakstatus

Description
The outbreakstatus command shows the current Outbreak Filters feature settings, including whether the Outbreak Filters feature is enabled, any Outbreak Rules, and the current threshold.

Usage
Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-127 outbreakstatus

mail3.example.com> outbreakstatus

Outbreak Filters: Enabled

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Last Update</th>
<th>Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CASE Core Files</td>
<td>26 Jan 2014 06:45 (GMT +00:00)</td>
<td>3.3.1-005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASE Utilities</td>
<td>26 Jan 2014 06:45 (GMT +00:00)</td>
<td>3.3.1-005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outbreak Rules</td>
<td>26 Jan 2014 07:00 (GMT +00:00)</td>
<td>20140126_063240</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Threat Outbreak</th>
<th>Outbreak</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level</td>
<td>Rule Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>OUTBREAK_0002187_03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>OUTBREAK_0005678_00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>OUTBREAK_0000578_00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Outbreak Filter Rules with higher threat levels pose greater risks.

(5 = highest threat, 1 = lowest threat)

Last update: Mon Jan 27 04:36:27 2014

mail3.example.com>

outbreakupdate

Description

Requests an immediate update of CASE rules and engine core.
Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto).

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

Table 3-128 outbreakupdate

elroy.run> outbreakupdate

Requesting updates for Outbreak Filter Rules.

Policy Enforcement

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- dictionaryconfig
- exceptionconfig
- filters
- policyconfig
- quarantineconfig
- scanconfig
- stripheaders
- textconfig

dictionaryconfig

Description

Configure content dictionaries

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Use `dictionaryconfig -> new` to create dictionaries, and `dictionaryconfig -> delete` to remove dictionaries.

**Table 3-129  dictionaryconfig - Creating a Dictionary 1**

```
example.com> dictionaryconfig

No content dictionaries have been defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new content dictionary.

[]> new

Enter a name for this content dictionary.

[]> HRWords

Do you wish to specify a file for import? [N]>

Enter new words or regular expressions, enter a blank line to finish.
<list of words typed here>

Currently configured content dictionaries:
1. HRWords

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new content dictionary.
- EDIT - Modify a content dictionary.
- DELETE - Remove a content dictionary.
- RENAME - Change the name of a content dictionary.

[]> delete
In this example, a new dictionary named “secret_words” is created to contain the term “codename.” Once the dictionary has been entered, the edit -> settings subcommand is used to define the case-sensitivity and word boundary detection for words in the dictionary.

**Table 3-129**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dictionaryconfig - Creating a Dictionary 1 (Continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Enter the number of the dictionary you want to delete:

1. HRWords
   
   []> 1

Content dictionary "HRWords" deleted.

No content dictionaries have been defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new content dictionary.
   
   []>

In this example, a new dictionary named “secret_words” is created to contain the term “codename.” Once the dictionary has been entered, the edit -> settings subcommand is used to define the case-sensitivity and word boundary detection for words in the dictionary.

**Table 3-130**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dictionaryconfig - Creating a Dictionary 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

mail3.example.com> dictionaryconfig

No content dictionaries have been defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new content dictionary.
   
   []> new

Enter a name for this content dictionary.

   []> secret_words

Do you wish to specify a file for import? [N]>

Enter new words or regular expressions, enter a blank line to finish.
Currently configured content dictionaries:

1. secret_words

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new content dictionary.
- EDIT - Modify a content dictionary.
- DELETE - Remove a content dictionary.
- RENAME - Change the name of a content dictionary.

[>] edit

Enter the number of the dictionary you want to edit:

1. secret_words

[>] 1

Choose the operation you want to perform on dictionary 'secret_words':

- NEW - Create new entries in this dictionary.
- IMPORT - Replace all of the words in this dictionary.
- EXPORT - Export the words in this dictionary.
- DELETE - Remove an entry in this dictionary.
- PRINT - List the entries in this dictionary.
- SETTINGS - Change settings for this dictionary.

[>] settings

Do you want to ignore case when matching using this dictionary? [Y]>

Do you want strings in this dictionary to only match complete words? [Y]>

Table 3-130  dictionaryconfig - Creating a Dictionary 2 (Continued)
Enter the default encoding to be used for exporting this dictionary:

1. US-ASCII
2. Unicode (UTF-8)
3. Unicode (UTF-16)
4. Western European/Latin-1 (ISO 8859-1)
5. Western European/Latin-1 (Windows CP1252)
6. Traditional Chinese (Big 5)
7. Simplified Chinese (GB 2312)
8. Simplified Chinese (HZ GB 2312)
11. Japanese (Shift-JIS (X0123))
13. Japanese (EUC)

Choose the operation you want to perform on dictionary 'secret_words':

- NEW - Create new entries in this dictionary.
- IMPORT - Replace all of the words in this dictionary.
- EXPORT - Export the words in this dictionary.
- DELETE - Remove an entry in this dictionary.
- PRINT - List the entries in this dictionary.
- SETTINGS - Change settings for this dictionary.

Currently configured content dictionaries:

1. secret_words
**Policy Enforcement**

**Chapter 3  The Commands: Reference Examples**

---

**Table 3-130 dictionaryconfig - Creating a Dictionary 2 (Continued)**

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **NEW** - Create a new content dictionary.
- **EDIT** - Modify a content dictionary.
- **DELETE** - Remove a content dictionary.
- **RENAME** - Change the name of a content dictionary.

[]>

```
mail3.example.com> commit
```

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

[]> **Added new dictionary: secret_words**

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT

---

**Importing Dictionaries**

In the example below, using the `dictionaryconfig` command, 84 terms in the `profanity.txt` text file are imported as Unicode (UTF-8) into a dictionary named `profanity`.

**Table 3-131 dictionaryconfig - Importing Dictionaries**

```
mail3.example.com> dictionaryconfig
```

No content dictionaries have been defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **NEW** - Create a new content dictionary.

[]> **new**

Enter a name for this content dictionary.

[]> **profanity**
Table 3-131  dictionaryconfig - Importing Dictionaries (Continued)

Do you wish to specify a file for import? [N]> y

Enter the name of the file to import:

[]> profanity.txt

Enter the encoding to use for the imported file:

1. US-ASCII
2. Unicode (UTF-8)
3. Unicode (UTF-16)
4. Western European/Latin-1 (ISO 8859-1)
5. Western European/Latin-1 (Windows CP1252)
6. Traditional Chinese (Big 5)
7. Simplified Chinese (GB 2312)
8. Simplified Chinese (HZ GB 2312)
11. Japanese (Shift-JIS (X0123))
13. Japanese (EUC)

[2]>

84 entries imported successfully.
Currently configured content dictionaries:

1. profanity

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new content dictionary.
In the example below, using the `dictionaryconfig` command, the `secret_words` dictionary is exported to a text file named `secret_words_export.txt`.

**Exporting Dictionaries**

In the example below, using the `dictionaryconfig` command, the `secret_words` dictionary is exported to a text file named `secret_words_export.txt`.

**Table 3-131 dictionaryconfig - Importing Dictionaries (Continued)**

- EDIT - Modify a content dictionary.
- DELETE - Remove a content dictionary.
- RENAME - Change the name of a content dictionary.

**Exporting Dictionaries**

In the example below, using the `dictionaryconfig` command, the `secret_words` dictionary is exported to a text file named `secret_words_export.txt`.

**Table 3-132 dictionaryconfig - Exporting a Dictionary**

Currently configured content dictionaries:

1. secret_words

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new content dictionary.
- EDIT - Modify a content dictionary.
- DELETE - Remove a content dictionary.
- RENAME - Change the name of a content dictionary.

[]>`edit`

Enter the number of the dictionary you want to edit:

1. secret_words

[]>`1`

Choose the operation you want to perform on dictionary 'secret_words':

- NEW - Create new entries in this dictionary.
- IMPORT - Replace all of the words in this dictionary.
- EXPORT - Export the words in this dictionary.
- DELETE - Remove an entry in this dictionary.
- PRINT - List the entries in this dictionary.
- SETTINGS - Change settings for this dictionary.

$>$ export

Enter a name for the exported file:

$>$ secret_words_export.txt

mail3.example.com> dictionaryconfig

Currently configured content dictionaries:
1. secret_words

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new content dictionary.
- EDIT - Modify a content dictionary.
- DELETE - Remove a content dictionary.
- RENAME - Change the name of a content dictionary.

$>$ edit

Enter the number of the dictionary you want to edit:
1. secret_words

$>$ 1

Choose the operation you want to perform on dictionary 'secret_words':
- NEW - Create new entries in this dictionary.
- IMPORT - Replace all of the words in this dictionary.
- EXPORT - Export the words in this dictionary.
- DELETE - Remove an entry in this dictionary.
**exceptionconfig**

**Description**

Use the `exceptionconfig` command in the CLI to create the domain exception table. In this example, the email address “admin@zzzaazzz.com” is added to the domain exception table with a policy of “Allow.”

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.
Table 3-133  exceptionconfig

mail3.example.com> exceptionconfig

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new domain exception table entry

[]> new

Enter a domain, sub-domain, user, or email address for which you wish to provide an exception:

[]> mail.partner.com

Any of the following passes:
- @[IP address]
  Matches any email address with this IP address.
- @domain
  Matches any email address with this domain.
- @.partial.domain
  Matches any email address domain ending in this domain.
- user@
  Matches any email address beginning with user@.
- user@domain
  Matches entire email address.

Enter a domain, sub-domain, user, or email address for which you wish to provide an exception:

[]> admin@zzzaazzz.com

Choose a policy for this domain exception:
Table 3-133  exceptionconfig (Continued)

1. Allow
2. Reject

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new domain exception table entry
- EDIT - Edit a domain exception table entry
- DELETE - Delete a domain exception table entry
- PRINT - Print all domain exception table entries
- SEARCH - Search domain exception table
- CLEAR - Clear all domain exception entries

filters

Description

Configure message processing options.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format

Example

In this example, the filter command is used to create three new filters:

- The first filter is named big_messages. It uses the body-size rule to drop messages larger than 10 megabytes.
- The second filter is named no_mp3s. It uses the attachment-filename rule to drop messages that contain attachments with the filename extension of .mp3.
- The third filter is named mailfrompm. It uses mail-from rule examines all mail from postmaster@example.com and blind-carbon copies administrator@example.com.
Using the `filter -> list` subcommand, the filters are listed to confirm that they are active and valid, and then the first and last filters are switched in position using the `move` subcommand. Finally, the changes are committed so that the filters take effect.

**Table 3-134 filters**

```
mail3.example.com> filters
```

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **NEW** - Create a new filter.
- **IMPORT** - Import a filter script from a file.

`[]> new`

Enter filter script. Enter '.' on its own line to end.

```plaintext
big_messages:
    if (body-size >= 10M) {
        drop();
    }
```

1 filters added.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **NEW** - Create a new filter.
- **DELETE** - Remove a filter.
- **IMPORT** - Import a filter script from a file.
- **EXPORT** - Export filters to a file
- **MOVE** - Move a filter to a different position.
- **SET** - Set a filter attribute.
- **LIST** - List the filters.
- **DETAIL** - Get detailed information on the filters.
- **LOGCONFIG** - Configure log subscriptions used by filters.
- **ROLLOVERNOW** - Roll over a filter log file.
new

Enter filter script. Enter '.' on its own line to end.

no_mp3s:

    if (attachment-filename == '\.mp3$') {
        drop();
    }

.  

1 filters added.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new filter.
- DELETE - Remove a filter.
- IMPORT - Import a filter script from a file.
- EXPORT - Export filters to a file
- MOVE - Move a filter to a different position.
- SET - Set a filter attribute.
- LIST - List the filters.
- DETAIL - Get detailed information on the filters.
- LOGCONFIG - Configure log subscriptions used by filters.
- ROLLOVERNOW - Roll over a filter log file.

new

Enter filter script. Enter '.' on its own line to end.

mailfrompm:

    if (mail-from == "^postmaster$")
        { bcc ("administrator@example.com");}

.  

1 filters added.
Table 3-134  filters (Continued)

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new filter.
- DELETE - Remove a filter.
- IMPORT - Import a filter script from a file.
- EXPORT - Export filters to a file
- MOVE - Move a filter to a different position.
- SET - Set a filter attribute.
- LIST - List the filters.
- DETAIL - Get detailed information on the filters.
- LOGCONFIG - Configure log subscriptions used by filters.
- ROLLOVERNOW - Roll over a filter log file.

[]> list

policyconfig

Description

Configure per recipient or sender based policies.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

In this example, the policyconfig -> edit -> antispam subcommand is used to edit the Anti-Spam settings for the default incoming mail policy. (Note that this same configuration is available in the GUI from the Email Security Manager feature.)

- First, messages positively identified as spam are chosen not to be archived; they will be dropped.
Policy Enforcement

- Messages that are suspected to be spam are chosen to be archived. They will also be sent to the Spam Quarantine installed on the server named quarantine.example.com. The text [quarantined: possible spam] is prepended to the subject line and a special header of X-quarantined: true is configured to be added to these suspect messages. In this scenario, Administrators and end-users can check the quarantine for false positives, and an administrator can adjust, if necessary, the suspected spam threshold.

- Unwanted marketing messages are delivered with the text [MARKETING] prepended to the subject line.

Finally, the changes are committed.

Note: See Table 3-141 on page 3-317 to see an example of how DLP policies are enabled on an outgoing mail policy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-135</th>
<th>policyconfig - Editing the Default Anti-Spam Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

mail3.example.com> policyconfig

Would you like to configure Incoming or Outgoing Mail Policies?

1. Incoming
2. Outgoing

[1]> 1

Incoming Mail Policy Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name:</th>
<th>Anti-Spam:</th>
<th>Anti-Virus:</th>
<th>Content Filter:</th>
<th>Outbreak Filters:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>McAfee</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- FILTERS - Edit content filters

[]> edit
Table 3-135  policyconfig - Editing the Default Anti-Spam Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name:</th>
<th>Anti-Spam:</th>
<th>Anti-Virus:</th>
<th>Content Filter:</th>
<th>Outbreak Filters:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. DEFAULT</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>McAfee</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enter the name or number of the entry you wish to edit:

[]> 1

Policy Summaries:

Anti-Spam: IronPort - Deliver, Prepend "[SPAM] " to Subject
Suspect-Spam: IronPort - Deliver, Prepend "[SUSPECTED SPAM] " to Subject
Anti-Virus: McAfee - Scan and Clean
Content Filters: Off (No content filters have been created)
Outbreak Filters: Enabled. No bypass extensions.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- ANTISPAM - Modify Anti-Spam policy
- ANTIVIRUS - Modify Anti-Virus policy
- OUTBREAK - Modify Outbreak Filters policy

[>] antispam

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- EDIT - Edit Anti-Spam policy
- DISABLE - Disable Anti-Spam policy (Disables all policy-related actions)

[>] edit
Some messages will be positively identified as spam. Some messages will be identified as suspected spam. You can set the IronPort Anti-Spam Suspected Spam Threshold below.

The following configuration options apply to messages POSITIVELY identified as spam:

What score would you like to set for the IronPort Anti-Spam spam threshold?

[90]> 90

1. DELIVER
2. DROP
3. BOUNCE
4. IRONPORT QUARANTINE

What do you want to do with messages identified as spam?

[1]> 2

Do you want to archive messages identified as spam? [N]>

Do you want to enable special treatment of suspected spam? [Y]> y

What score would you like to set for the IronPort Anti-Spam suspect spam threshold?

[50]> 50

The following configuration options apply to messages identified as SUSPECTED spam:

1. DELIVER
2. DROP
3. BOUNCE
Table 3-135  policyconfig - Editing the Default Anti-Spam Settings

4. IRONPORT QUARANTINE

What do you want to do with messages identified as SUSPECTED spam?

[1]> 4

Do you want to archive messages identified as SUSPECTED spam? [N]> y

1. PREPEND
2. APPEND
3. NONE

Do you want to add text to the subject of messages identified as SUSPECTED spam?

[1]> 1

What text do you want to prepend to the subject?

[<<SUSPECTED SPAM>>]> [quarantined: possible spam]

Do you want to add a custom header to messages identified as SUSPECTED spam? [N]> y

Enter the name of the header:

[>] X-quarantined

Enter the text for the content of the header:

[>] true

Marketing email is normally legitimate email but sometimes undesirable. Do you want to enable special treatment of marketing messages? [N]> y

The following configuration options apply to messages identified as marketing messages:

1. DELIVER
Policy Enforcement

Chapter 3      The Commands: Reference Examples

Table 3-135    policyconfig - Editing the Default Anti-Spam Settings

2. DROP
3. BOUNCE
4. IRONPORT QUARANTINE

What do you want to do with messages identified as marketing messages?

[1]> 1

Do you want to archive messages identified as marketing messages? [N]>

1. PREPEND
2. APPEND
3. NONE

Do you want to add text to the subject of messages identified as marketing messages?

[1]> 1

What text do you want to prepend to the subject?

[[MARKETING] ]> [MARKETING]

Do you want marketing messages sent to an external quarantine or alternate destination host? [N]> n

Do you want to add a custom header to messages identified as marketing messages? [N]> n

Do you want marketing messages sent to an alternate envelope recipient? [N]> n

Anti-Spam configuration complete

Policy Summaries:
Table 3-135  *policyconfig - Editing the Default Anti-Spam Settings*

Anti-Spam: IronPort - Drop
Suspect-Spam: IronPort - Quarantine - Archiving copies of the original message.
Marketing-Messages: IronPort - Deliver, Prepend "[MARKETING]" to Subject
Anti-Virus: McAfee - Scan and Clean
Content Filters: Off (No content filters have been created)
Outbreak Filters: Enabled. No bypass extensions.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- ANTISPAM - Modify Anti-Spam policy
- ANTIVIRUS - Modify Anti-Virus policy
- OUTBREAK - Modify Outbreak Filters policy

[>]

Incoming Mail Policy Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Anti-Spam</th>
<th>Anti-Virus</th>
<th>Content Filter</th>
<th>Outbreak Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>McAfee</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- FILTERS - Edit content filters

[>]

mail3.example.com> commit
Policy Enforcement

Chapter 3      The Commands: Reference Examples

Table 3-135  policyconfig - Editing the Default Anti-Spam Settings

Please enter some comments describing your changes:

[ ]> configured anti-spam for Incoming Default Policy

Do you want to save the current configuration for rollback? [Y]> n

Changes committed: Fri May 23 11:42:12 2014 GMT

Then, use the new subcommand to add two new policies for different sets of users — the sales organization and the engineering organization — and configure different email security settings for each. In the CLI, you can configure different settings than the default as you create the policy.

First, create the policy for the sales team, specifying a more aggressive anti-spam setting:

Table 3-136  policyconfig - Creating a Policy for the Sales Team

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name:</th>
<th>Anti-Spam:</th>
<th>Anti-Virus:</th>
<th>Content Filter:</th>
<th>Outbreak Filters:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>McAfee</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- FILTERS - Edit content filters

[ ]> new

Enter the name for this policy:

[ ]> sales_team

Begin entering policy members. The following types of entries are allowed:

Username entries such as joe@, domain entries such as @example.com, sub-domain
Table 3-136  policyconfig - Creating a Policy for the Sales Team

entries such as *@.example.com*, LDAP group memberships such as ldap(Engineers)

Enter a member for this policy:

[]> ldap(sales)

Please select an LDAP group query:

1. PublicLDAP.ldapgroup

[1]> 1

Is this entry a recipient or a sender?

1. Recipient

2. Sender

[1]> 1

Add another member? [Y]> n

Would you like to enable Anti-Spam support? [Y]> y

Use the policy table default? [Y]> n

Begin Anti-Spam configuration

Some messages will be positively identified as spam. Some messages will be identified as suspected spam. You can set the IronPort Anti-Spam Suspected Spam Threshold below.

The following configuration options apply to messages POSITIVELY identified as spam:

What score would you like to set for the IronPort Anti-Spam spam threshold?

[90]> 90
Policy Enforcement

Chapter 3      The Commands: Reference Examples

Table 3-136 policyconfig - Creating a Policy for the Sales Team

1. DELIVER
2. DROP
3. BOUNCE
4. IRONPORT QUARANTINE

What do you want to do with messages identified as spam? [1]> 2

Do you want to archive messages identified as spam? [N]> n

Do you want to enable special treatment of suspected spam? [Y]> y

What score would you like to set for the IronPort Anti-Spam suspect spam threshold? [50]> 50

The following configuration options apply to messages identified as SUSPECTED spam:
1. DELIVER
2. DROP
3. BOUNCE
4. IRONPORT QUARANTINE

What do you want to do with messages identified as SUSPECTED spam? [1]> 4

Do you want to archive messages identified as SUSPECTED spam? [N]> n

1. PREPEND
Table 3-136  policyconfig - Creating a Policy for the Sales Team

2. APPEND
3. NONE

Do you want to add text to the subject of messages identified as SUSPECTED spam?

[1]> 3

Do you want to add a custom header to messages identified as SUSPECTED spam? [N]> n

Marketing email is normally legitimate email but sometimes undesirable. Do you want to enable special treatment of marketing messages? [N]> n

Anti-Spam configuration complete

Would you like to enable Anti-Virus support? [Y]> y

Use the policy table default? [Y]> y

Would you like to enable Outbreak Filters for this policy? [Y]> y

Use the policy table default? [Y]> y

Incoming Mail Policy Configuration

Name: Anti-Spam: Anti-Virus: Content Filter: Outbreak Filters:
------ ------------- ------------- --------------- ----------------
sales_team IronPort Default Default Default
DEFAULT IronPort McAfee Off Enabled
Then, create the policy for the engineering team (three individual email recipients), specifying that .dwg files are exempt from Outbreak Filter scanning.

| Table 3-136 policyconfig - Creating a Policy for the Sales Team |

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- DELETE - Remove a policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- SEARCH - Search for a policy by member
- FILTERS - Edit content filters
- CLEAR - Clear all policies

Then, create the policy for the engineering team (three individual email recipients), specifying that .dwg files are exempt from Outbreak Filter scanning.

| Table 3-137 policyconfig - Creating a Policy for the Engineering Team |

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- DELETE - Remove a policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- SEARCH - Search for a policy by member
- FILTERS - Edit content filters
- CLEAR - Clear all policies
Enter the name for this policy:

```
[1]> engineering
```

Begin entering policy members. The following types of entries are allowed:

- Username entries such as joe@, domain entries such as @example.com, sub-domain entries such as @.example.com, LDAP group memberships such as ldap(Engineers)

Enter a member for this policy:

```
[1]> bob@example.com
```

Is this entry a recipient or a sender?

1. Recipient
2. Sender

```
[1]> 1
```

Add another member? [Y]> y

Enter a member for this policy:

```
[1]> fred@example.com
```

Is this entry a recipient or a sender?

1. Recipient
2. Sender

```
[1]> 1
```

Add another member? [Y]> y
Enter a member for this policy:

[]> joe@example.com

Is this entry a recipient or a sender?
1. Recipient
2. Sender

[1]> 1

Add another member? [Y]> n

Would you like to enable Anti-Spam support? [Y]> y

Use the policy table default? [Y]> y

Would you like to enable Anti-Virus support? [Y]> y

Use the policy table default? [Y]> y

Would you like to enable Outbreak Filters for this policy? [Y]> y

Use the policy table default? [Y]> n

Would you like to modify the list of file extensions that bypass Outbreak Filters? [N]> y

Choose the operation you want to perform:

Table 3-137 policyconfig - Creating a Policy for the Engineering Team
Chapter 3  The Commands: Reference Examples

Policy Enforcement

Table 3-137  policyconfig - Creating a Policy for the Engineering Team

- NEW  - Add a file extension

[]> new

Enter a file extension:

[]> dwg

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW  - Add a file extension
- DELETE  - Delete a file extension
- PRINT  - Display all file extensions
- CLEAR  - Clear all file extensions

[]> print

The following file extensions will bypass Outbreak Filter processing:

dwg

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW  - Add a file extension
- DELETE  - Delete a file extension
- PRINT  - Display all file extensions
- CLEAR  - Clear all file extensions

[]>

Incoming Mail Policy Configuration

Name:           Anti-Spam:     Anti-Virus: Content Filter: Outbreak Filters:
-----           -------------  ----------- --------------- ----------------
Next, create three new content filters to be used in the Incoming Mail Overview policy table.

In the CLI, the `filters` subcommand of the `policyconfig` command is the equivalent of the Incoming Content Filters GUI page. When you create content filters in the CLI, you must use the `save` subcommand to save the filter and return to the `policyconfig` command.

First, create the `scan_for_confidential` content filter:

### Table 3-137 policyconfig - Creating a Policy for the Engineering Team

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Anti-Spam</th>
<th>Anti-Virus</th>
<th>Content Filter</th>
<th>Outbreak Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sales_team</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>McAfee</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- DELETE - Remove a policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- SEARCH - Search for a policy by member
- MOVE - Move the position of a policy
- FILTERS - Edit content filters
- CLEAR - Clear all policies

Next, create three new content filters to be used in the Incoming Mail Overview policy table.

First, create the `scan_for_confidential` content filter:

### Table 3-138 policyconfig - Creating the `scan_for_confidential` Content Filter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Anti-Spam</th>
<th>Anti-Virus: Content Filter</th>
<th>Outbreak Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sales_team</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>McAfee</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- DELETE - Remove a policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- SEARCH - Search for a policy by member
- MOVE - Move the position of a policy
- FILTERS - Edit content filters
- CLEAR - Clear all policies

[]> filters

No filters defined.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new filter

[]> new

Enter a name for this filter:

[]> scan_for_confidential

Enter a description or comment for this filter (optional):

[]> scan all incoming mail for the string 'confidential'

Filter Name: scan_for_confidential

Conditions:
Always Run
Table 3-138  
*policyconfig* - *Creating the scan_for_confidential Content Filter*

Actions:

No actions defined yet.

Description:

*scan all incoming mail for the string 'confidential'*

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- RENAME - Rename this filter
- DESC - Edit filter description
- ADD - Add condition or action

1> add

1. Condition
2. Action

[1]> 1

1. Message Body Contains
2. Only Body Contains (Attachments are not scanned)
3. Message Body Size
4. Subject Header
5. Other Header
6. Attachment Contains
7. Attachment File Type
8. Attachment Name
9. Attachment MIME Type
10. Attachment Protected
11. Attachment Unprotected
12. Attachment Corrupt
Table 3-138  

*policyconfig - Creating the `scan_for_confidential` Content Filter*

13. Envelope Recipient Address
14. Envelope Recipient in LDAP Group
15. Envelope Sender Address
16. Envelope Sender in LDAP Group
17. Reputation Score
18. Remote IP
19. DKIM authentication result
20. SPF verification result

[1]> 1

Enter regular expression or smart identifier to search message contents for:

[]> confidential

Threshold required for match:

[1]> 1

Filter Name:  `scan_for_confidential`

Conditions:

`body-contains("confidential", 1)`

Actions:

No actions defined yet.

Description:

`scan all incoming mail for the string 'confidential'`

Choose the operation you want to perform:
Table 3-138  policyconfig - Creating the scan_for_confidential Content Filter

- RENAME - Rename this filter
- DESC - Edit filter description
- ADD - Add condition or action
- DELETE - Delete condition or action

[1]> add

1. Condition
2. Action

[1]> 2

1. Bcc
2. Notify
3. Redirect To Alternate Email Address
4. Redirect To Alternate Host
5. Insert A Custom Header
6. Insert A Message Tag
7. Strip A Header
8. Send From Specific IP Interface
9. Drop Attachments By Content
10. Drop Attachments By Name
11. Drop Attachments By MIME Type
12. Drop Attachments By File Type
13. Drop Attachments By Size
14. Send To System Quarantine
15. Duplicate And Send To System Quarantine
16. Add Log Entry
17. Drop (Final Action)
18. Bounce (Final Action)
Table 3-138  policyconfig - Creating the scan_for_confidential Content Filter

19. Skip Remaining Content Filters (Final Action)

20. Encrypt (Final Action)

21. Encrypt on Delivery

22. Skip Outbreak Filters check

[1]> 1

Enter the email address(es) to send the Bcc message to:

[]> hr@example.com

Do you want to edit the subject line used on the Bcc message? [N]> y

Enter the subject to use:

[subject]> [message matched confidential filter]

Do you want to edit the return path of the Bcc message? [N]> n

Filter Name: scan_for_confidential

Conditions:

body-contains("confidential", 1)

Actions:

bcc ("hr@example.com", ":message matched confidential filter")

Description:

scan all incoming mail for the string 'confidential'

Choose the operation you want to perform:
### Table 3-138

`policyconfig` - Creating the `scan_for_confidential` Content Filter

- **RENAME** - Rename this filter
- **DESC** - Edit filter description
- **ADD** - Add condition or action
- **DELETE** - Delete condition or action
- **SAVE** - Save filter

```
[1]> add

1. Condition
2. Action

[1]> 2
```

1. Bcc
2. Notify
3. Redirect To Alternate Email Address
4. Redirect To Alternate Host
5. Insert A Custom Header
6. Insert A Message Tag
7. Strip A Header
8. Send From Specific IP Interface
9. Drop Attachments By Content
10. Drop Attachments By Name
11. Drop Attachments By MIME Type
12. Drop Attachments By File Type
13. Drop Attachments By Size
14. Send To System Quarantine
15. Duplicate And Send To System Quarantine
16. Add Log Entry
17. Drop (Final Action)
Table 3-138  *policyconfig* - Creating the `scan_for_confidential` Content Filter

18. Bounce (Final Action)

19. Skip Remaining Content Filters (Final Action)

20. Encrypt (Final Action)

21. Encrypt on Delivery

22. Skip Outbreak Filters check

[1]> 14

1. Policy

[1]> 1

Filter Name:  `scan_for_confidential`

Conditions:

body-contains("confidential", 1)

Actions:

bcc ("hr@example.com", "[message matched confidential filter]")

quarantine ("Policy")

Description:

scan all incoming mail for the string 'confidential'

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- RENAME - Rename this filter
- DESC - Edit filter description
- ADD - Add condition or action
- DELETE - Delete condition or action
- MOVE - Reorder the conditions or actions
Code Example 3-139 illustrates creating the next two content filters. (Note that you cannot specify the variables for envelope sender and envelope recipient from within the CLI.)

**Table 3-139  policyconfig - Creating the no_mp3s and ex_employee Content Filters**

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new filter
- EDIT - Edit an existing filter
- DELETE - Delete a filter
- PRINT - Print all filters
- RENAME - Rename a filter

[]> new

Enter a name for this filter:

[]> no_mp3s
Enter a description or comment for this filter (optional):

[]> strip all MP3 attachments

Filter Name: no_mp3s

Conditions:
Always Run

Actions:
No actions defined yet.

Description:
strip all MP3 attachments

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- RENAME - Rename this filter
- DESC - Edit filter description
- ADD - Add condition or action

[]> add

1. Condition
2. Action

[1]> 2

1. Bcc
2. Notify
3. Redirect To Alternate Email Address
4. Redirect To Alternate Host
Table 3-139  

```plaintext
policyconfig - Creating the no_mp3s and ex_employee Content Filters (Continued)
```

5. Insert A Custom Header
6. Insert A Message Tag
7. Strip A Header
8. Send From Specific IP Interface
9. Drop Attachments By Content
10. Drop Attachments By Name
11. Drop Attachments By MIME Type
12. Drop Attachments By File Type
13. Drop Attachments By Size
14. Send To System Quarantine
15. Duplicate And Send To System Quarantine
16. Add Log Entry
17. Drop (Final Action)
18. Bounce (Final Action)
19. Skip Remaining Content Filters (Final Action)
20. Encrypt (Final Action)
21. Encrypt on Delivery
22. Skip Outbreak Filters check

[1]> 12

Enter the file type to strip:

[]> mp3

Do you want to enter specific text to use in place of any stripped attachments? [N]> n

Filter Name: no_mp3s
Table 3-139  `policyconfig - Creating the no_mp3s and ex_employee Content Filters (Continued)`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Always Run</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actions:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>drop-attachments-by-filetype(&quot;mp3&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strip all MP3 attachments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- RENAME - Rename this filter
- DESC - Edit filter description
- ADD - Add condition or action
- SAVE - Save filter

```
[> save
```

Defined filters:

1. scan_for_confidential: scan all incoming mail for the string 'confidential'
2. no_mp3s: strip all MP3 attachments

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new filter
- EDIT - Edit an existing filter
- DELETE - Delete a filter
- PRINT - Print all filters
- MOVE - Reorder a filter
- RENAME - Rename a filter

```
[> new
```
Enter a name for this filter:

[]> ex_employee

Enter a description or comment for this filter (optional):

[]> bounce messages intended for Doug

Filter Name:  ex_employee

Conditions:

Always Run

Actions:

No actions defined yet.

Description:

bounce messages intended for Doug

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- RENAME - Rename this filter
- DESC - Edit filter description
- ADD - Add condition or action

[]> add

1. Condition
2. Action

[1]> 1
Table 3-139  policyconfig - Creating the no_mp3s and ex_employee Content Filters  (Continued)

1. Message Body Contains
2. Only Body Contains (Attachments are not scanned)
3. Message Body Size
4. Subject Header
5. Other Header
6. Attachment Contains
7. Attachment File Type
8. Attachment Name
9. Attachment MIME Type
10. Attachment Protected
11. Attachment Unprotected
12. Attachment Corrupt
13. Envelope Recipient Address
14. Envelope Recipient in LDAP Group
15. Envelope Sender Address
16. Envelope Sender in LDAP Group
17. Reputation Score
18. Remote IP
19. DKIM authentication result
20. SPF verification result

[1]> 13

Enter regular expression to search Recipient address for:

[1]> doug

Filter Name:  ex_employee

Conditions:
### Table 3-139 policyconfig - Creating the `no_mp3s` and `ex_employee` Content Filters (Continued)

rcpt-to == 'doug'

Actions:
No actions defined yet.

Description:
bounce messages intended for Doug

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- RENAME - Rename this filter
- DESC - Edit filter description
- ADD - Add condition or action
- DELETE - Delete condition or action

[]> add

1. Condition
2. Action

[1]> 2

1. Bcc
2. Notify
3. Redirect To Alternate Email Address
4. Redirect To Alternate Host
5. Insert A Custom Header
6. Insert A Message Tag
7. Strip A Header
8. Send From Specific IP Interface
9. Drop Attachments By Content
Table 3-139  policyconfig - Creating the no_mp3s and ex_employee Content Filters (Continued)

10. Drop Attachments By Name
11. Drop Attachments By MIME Type
12. Drop Attachments By File Type
13. Drop Attachments By Size
14. Send To System Quarantine
15. Duplicate And Send To System Quarantine
16. Add Log Entry
17. Drop (Final Action)
18. Bounce (Final Action)
19. Skip Remaining Content Filters (Final Action)
20. Encrypt (Final Action)
21. Encrypt on Delivery
22. Skip Outbreak Filters check

[1]> 2

Enter the email address(es) to send the notification to:

[1]> joe@example.com

Do you want to edit the subject line used on the notification? [N]> y

Enter the subject to use:

[1]> message bounced for ex-employee of example.com

Do you want to edit the return path of the notification? [N]> n

Do you want to include a copy of the original message as an attachment to the notification? [N]> y
Table 3-139  policyconfig - Creating the no_mp3s and ex_employee Content Filters (Continued)

Filter Name:  ex_employee

Conditions:
rcpt-to == 'doug'

Actions:
notify-copy ("joe@example.com", "message bounced for ex-employee of example.com")

Description:
bounce messages intended for Doug

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- RENAME - Rename this filter
- DESC - Edit filter description
- ADD - Add condition or action
- DELETE - Delete condition or action
- SAVE - Save filter

[>] add

1. Condition
2. Action

[1]> 2

1. Bcc
2. Notify
3. Redirect To Alternate Email Address
4. Redirect To Alternate Host
Table 3-139  

| Policy Enforcement |

5. Insert A Custom Header
6. Insert A Message Tag
7. Strip A Header
8. Send From Specific IP Interface
9. Drop Attachments By Content
10. Drop Attachments By Name
11. Drop Attachments By MIME Type
12. Drop Attachments By File Type
13. Drop Attachments By Size
14. Send To System Quarantine
15. Duplicate And Send To System Quarantine
16. Add Log Entry
17. Drop (Final Action)
18. Bounce (Final Action)
19. Skip Remaining Content Filters (Final Action)
20. Encrypt (Final Action)
21. Encrypt on Delivery
22. Skip Outbreak Filters check

[1]> 18

Filter Name:  ex_employee

Conditions:
rcpt-to == "doug"

Actions:
notify-copy ("joe@example.com", "message bounced for ex-employee of example.com")
Table 3-139  

policyconfig - Creating the no_mp3s and ex_employee Content Filters  (Continued)

bounce()

Description:

bounce messages intended for Doug

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- RENAME - Rename this filter
- DESC - Edit filter description
- ADD - Add condition or action
- DELETE - Delete condition or action
- SAVE - Save filter

[]> save

Defined filters:

1. scan_for_confidential: scan all incoming mail for the string 'confidential'
2. no_mp3s: strip all MP3 attachments
3. ex_employee: bounce messages intended for Doug

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new filter
- EDIT - Edit an existing filter
- DELETE - Delete a filter
- PRINT - Print all filters
- MOVE - Reorder a filter
- RENAME - Rename a filter

[]>

Incoming Mail Policy Configuration
Code Example 3-140 illustrates how to enable the policies once again to enable the content filters for some policies, but not for others.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Anti-Spam</th>
<th>Anti-Virus</th>
<th>Content Filter</th>
<th>Outbreak Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sales_team</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>McAfee</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- DELETE - Remove a policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- SEARCH - Search for a policy by member
- MOVE - Move the position of a policy
- FILTERS - Edit content filters
- CLEAR - Clear all policies

Code Example 3-140 illustrates how to enable the policies once again to enable the content filters for some policies, but not for others.
Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- DELETE - Remove a policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- SEARCH - Search for a policy by member
- MOVE - Move the position of a policy
- FILTERS - Edit content filters
- CLEAR - Clear all policies

[]> edit

Name: Anti-Spam: Anti-Virus: Content Filter: Outbreak Filters:
----- -------------- -------------------------------
1. sales_team IronPort Default Default Default
2. engineering Default Default Default Enabled
3. DEFAULT IronPort McAfee Off Enabled

Enter the name or number of the entry you wish to edit:

[]> 3

Policy Summaries:

Anti-Spam: IronPort - Drop
Suspect-Spam: IronPort - Quarantine - Archiving copies of the original message.
Marketing-Messages: IronPort - Deliver, Prepend "[MARKETING]" to Subject
Anti-Virus: McAfee - Scan and Clean
Content Filters: Off
Outbreak Filters: Enabled. No bypass extensions.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- ANTISPAM - Modify Anti-Spam policy
- ANTIVIRUS - Modify Anti-Virus policy
- OUTBREAK - Modify Outbreak Filters policy
- FILTERS - Modify filters

[>] filters

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- ENABLE - Enable Content Filters policy

[>] enable

1. scan_for_confidential
2. no_mp3s
3. ex_employee

Enter the filter to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:

[>] 1

1. Active scan_for_confidential
2. no_mp3s
3. ex_employee

Enter the filter to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:

[>] 2

1. Active scan_for_confidential
2. Active no_mp3s
Policy Enforcement

Chapter 3 The Commands: Reference Examples

Table 3-140 policyconfig 0 Enabling Content Filters for Specific Policies (Continued)

3. ex_employee

Enter the filter to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:

3

1. Active scan_for_confidential
2. Active no_mp3s
3. Active ex_employee

Enter the filter to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:

[]>

Policy Summaries:

Anti-Spam: IronPort - Drop
Suspect-Spam: IronPort - Quarantine - Archiving copies of the original message.
Marketing-Messages: IronPort - Deliver, Prepend "[MARKETING]" to Subject
Anti-Virus: McAfee - Scan and Clean
Content Filters: Enabled. Filters: scan_for_confidential, no_mp3s, ex_employee
Outbreak Filters: Enabled. No bypass extensions.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- ANTISPAM - Modify Anti-Spam policy
- ANTIVIRUS - Modify Anti-Virus policy
- OUTBREAK - Modify Outbreak Filters policy
- FILTERS - Modify filters

[]>

Incoming Mail Policy Configuration

Name: Anti-Spam: Anti-Virus: Content Filter: Outbreak Filters:
**Table 3-140  policyconfig 0 Enabling Content Filters for Specific Policies  (Continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Anti-Spam:</th>
<th>Anti-Virus:</th>
<th>Content Filter:</th>
<th>Outbreak Filters:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sales_team</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>McAfee</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **NEW** - Create a new policy
- **EDIT** - Edit an existing policy
- **DELETE** - Remove a policy
- **PRINT** - Print all policies
- **SEARCH** - Search for a policy by member
- **MOVE** - Move the position of a policy
- **FILTERS** - Edit content filters
- **CLEAR** - Clear all policies

[>] edit

```
Name:   Anti-Spam:   Anti-Virus:  Content Filter:  Outbreak Filters:
-----   --------------   -----------   ---------------   ----------------
1. sales_team     IronPort     Default     Default     Default
2. engineering    Default     Default     Default     Enabled
3. DEFAULT        IronPort     McAfee      Enabled      Enabled
```

Enter the name or number of the entry you wish to edit:

[>] 2

Policy Summaries:
Policy Enforcement

Chapter 3      The Commands: Reference Examples

Table 3-140   policyconfig 0 Enabling Content Filters for Specific Policies  (Continued)

Anti-Spam: Default
Anti-Virus: Default
Content Filters: Default
Outbreak Filters: Enabled. Bypass extensions: dwg

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NAME - Change name of policy
- NEW - Add a new member
- DELETE - Remove a member
- PRINT - Print policy members
- ANTISPAM - Modify Anti-Spam policy
- ANTIVIRUS - Modify Anti-Virus policy
- OUTBREAK - Modify Outbreak Filters policy
- FILTERS - Modify filters

[]> filters

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- DISABLE - Disable Content Filters policy (Disables all policy-related actions)
- ENABLE - Enable Content Filters policy

[]> enable

1.       scan_for_confidential
2.       no_mp3s
3.       ex_employee

Enter the filter to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:
Table 3-140  policyconfig 0 Enabling Content Filters for Specific Policies  (Continued)

[1]> 1

1. Active scan_for_confidential
2.       no_mp3s
3.       ex_employee
Enter the filter to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:
[1]> 3

1. Active scan_for_confidential
2.       no_mp3s
3. Active ex_employee
Enter the filter to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:
[1]>

Policy Summaries:

Anti-Spam: Default
Anti-Virus: Default
Content Filters: Enabled. Filters: scan_for_confidential, ex_employee
Outbreak Filters: Enabled. Bypass extensions: dwg

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NAME - Change name of policy
- NEW - Add a new member
- DELETE - Remove a member
- PRINT - Print policy members
- ANTISPAM - Modify Anti-Spam policy
- ANTVIRUS - Modify Anti-Virus policy
Table 3-140 policyconfig 0 Enabling Content Filters for Specific Policies (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Anti-Spam</th>
<th>Anti-Virus</th>
<th>Content Filter</th>
<th>Outbreak Filter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sales_team</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT</td>
<td>IronPort</td>
<td>McAfee</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- DELETE - Remove a policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- SEARCH - Search for a policy by member
- MOVE - Move the position of a policy
- FILTERS - Edit content filters
- CLEAR - Clear all policies

The CLI does not contain the notion of adding a new content filter within an individual policy. Rather, the filters subcommand forces you to manage all content filters from within one subsection of the policyconfig command. For that reason, adding the drop_large_attachments has been omitted from this example.
Table 3-141 illustrates how to enable DLP policies on the default outgoing policy.

**Table 3-141 DLP Policies for Default Outgoing Policy**

mail3.example.com> policyconfig

Would you like to configure Incoming or Outgoing Mail Policies?

1. Incoming
2. Outgoing

[1]> 2

Outgoing Mail Policy Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Anti-Spam</th>
<th>Anti-Virus</th>
<th>Content Filter</th>
<th>Outbreak Filters</th>
<th>DLP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new policy
- EDIT - Edit an existing policy
- PRINT - Print all policies
- FILTERS - Edit content filters

[1]> edit

Enter the name or number of the entry you wish to edit:

[1]> 1

Policy Summaries:

Anti-Spam: Off
Policy Enforcement

Chapter 3     The Commands: Reference Examples

Policy Enforcement

Table 3-141  DLP Policies for Default Outgoing Policy

Anti-Virus: Off

Content Filters: Off (No content filters have been created)

Outbreak Filters: Off

DLP: Off

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- ANTISPAM - Modify Anti-Spam policy
- ANTIVIRUS - Modify Anti-Virus policy
- OUTBREAK - Modify Outbreak Filters policy
- DLP - Modify DLP policy

[>] dlp

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- ENABLE - Enable DLP policy

[>] enable

1. California AB-1298
2. Suspicious Transmission - Zip Files
3. Restricted Files

Enter the policy to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:

[>] 1

1. Active California AB-1298
2. Suspicious Transmission - Zip Files
3. Restricted Files

Enter the policy to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:

[>] 2
Table 3-141  DLP Policies for Default Outgoing Policy

1. Active California AB-1298
2. Active Suspicious Transmission - Zip Files
3. Restricted Files

Enter the policy to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:

[>] 3

1. Active California AB-1298
2. Active Suspicious Transmission - Zip Files
3. Active Restricted Files

Enter the policy to toggle on/off, or press enter to finish:

[>]

Policy Summaries:

Anti-Spam: Off
Anti-Virus: Off
Content Filters: Off (No content filters have been created)
Outbreak Filters: Off
DLP: Enabled. Policies: California AB-1298, Suspicious Transmission - Zip Files, Restricted Files

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- ANTISPAM - Modify Anti-Spam policy
- ANTIVIRUS - Modify Anti-Virus policy
- OUTBREAK - Modify Outbreak Filters policy
- DLP - Modify DLP policy

[>]
quarantineconfig

Description

Configure system quarantines.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-142  quarantineconfig

mail3.example.com> quarantineconfig

Currently configured quarantines:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#</th>
<th>Quarantine Name</th>
<th>Size (MB)</th>
<th>% full</th>
<th>Messages</th>
<th>Retention</th>
<th>Policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Outbreak</td>
<td>3,072</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12h</td>
<td>Release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Policy</td>
<td>1,024</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>497</td>
<td>10d</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Virus</td>
<td>2,048</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>30d</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2,048 MB available for quarantine allocation.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new quarantine.
- EDIT - Modify a quarantine.
- DELETE - Remove a quarantine.
- OUTBREAKMANAGE - Manage the Outbreak Filters quarantine.

[]> new

Please enter the name for this quarantine:

[]> HRQuarantine

Please enter the maximum size for this quarantine in MB:

[]> 1024

Retention period for this quarantine. (Use 'd' for days or 'h' for hours.):

[]> 15d

1. Delete
Table 3-142 quarantineconfig (Continued)

2. Release

Enter default action for quarantine:

[1]> 2

Do you want to modify the subject of messages that are released because "HRQuarantine" becomes full? [N]>

Do you want to give any users in the Operators/Guests groups access to this quarantine? [N]> y

No users in the Operators/Guests groups have access to "HRQuarantine"

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new user.

[1]> new

1. hrquar

Select a user name or number

[1]> 1

Users in the Operators/Guests groups with access to "HRQuarantine":

1. hrquar

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- DELETE - Delete a user.

[1]>

Currently configured quarantines:
Chapter 3  The Commands: Reference Examples

Policy Enforcement

Table 3-142  quarantineconfig (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#</th>
<th>Quarantine Name</th>
<th>Size (MB)</th>
<th>% full</th>
<th>Messages</th>
<th>Retention</th>
<th>Policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>HRQuarantine</td>
<td>1,024</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>15d</td>
<td>Release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Outbreak</td>
<td>3,072</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12h</td>
<td>Release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Policy</td>
<td>1,024</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>497</td>
<td>10d</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Virus</td>
<td>2,048</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>30d</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(N/A: Quarantine contents is not available at this time.)

1,024 MB available for quarantine allocation.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new quarantine.
- EDIT - Modify a quarantine.
- DELETE - Remove a quarantine.
- OUTBREAKMANAGE - Manage the Outbreak Filters quarantine.

Users and Quarantines

Once you answer “y” or yes to the question about adding users, you begin user management, where you can manage the user list. This lets you add or remove multiple users to the quarantine without having to go through the other quarantine configuration questions. Press Return (Enter) at an empty prompt ([ ]>) to exit the user management section and continue with configuring the quarantine.

Note
You will only be prompted to give users access to the quarantine if guest or operator users have already been created on the system.

A quarantine’s user list only contains users belonging to the Operators or Guests groups. Users in the Administrators group always have full access to the quarantine. When managing the user list, the NEW command is suppressed if all the Operator/Guest users are already on the quarantine’s user list. Similarly, DELETE is suppressed if there are no users to delete.

scanconfig

Description

Configure attachment scanning policy
Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Example

In this example, the `scanconfig` command sets these parameters:

- MIME types of video/*, audio/*, image/* are skipped (not scanned for content).
- Nested (recursive) archive attachments up to 10 levels are scanned. (The default is 5 levels.)
- The maximum size for attachments to be scanned is 25 megabytes; anything larger will be skipped. (The default is 5 megabytes.)
- The document metadata is scanned.
- Attachment scanning timeout is set at 180 seconds.
- Attachments that were not scanned are assumed to not match the search pattern. (This is the default behavior.)
- ASCII encoding is configured for use when none is specified for plain body text or anything with MIME type plain/text or plain/html.

Note

When setting the `assume the attachment matches the search pattern` to Y, messages that cannot be scanned will cause the message filter rule to evaluate to true. This could result in unexpected behavior, such as the quarantining of messages that do not match a dictionary, but were quarantined because their content could not be correctly scanned. This setting does not apply to RSA Email DLP scanning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-143</th>
<th>Scan Config - Configuring Scan Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mail3.example.com&gt; <code>scanconfig</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are currently 5 attachment type mappings configured to be SKIPPED.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a new entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- SETUP - Configure scanning behavior.
- IMPORT - Load mappings from a file.
- EXPORT - Save mappings to a file.
- PRINT - Display the list.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.
- SMIME - Configure S/MIME unpacking.
Table 3-143  Scan Config - Configuring Scan Behavior

[>] setup

1. Scan only attachments with MIME types or fingerprints in the list.
2. Skip attachments with MIME types or fingerprints in the list.

Choose one:

[2]> 2

Enter the maximum depth of attachment recursion to scan:

[5]> 10

Enter the maximum size of attachment to scan:

[5242880]> 10m

Do you want to scan attachment metadata? [Y]> y

Enter the attachment scanning timeout (in seconds):

[30]> 180

If a message has attachments that were not scanned for any reason (e.g. because of size, depth limits, or scanning timeout), assume the attachment matches the search pattern? [N]> n

If a message could not be deconstructed into its component parts in order to remove specified attachments, the system should:

1. Deliver
2. Bounce
3. Drop

[1]>
Configure encoding to use when none is specified for plain body text or anything with MIME type plain/text or plain/html.

1. US-ASCII
2. Unicode (UTF-8)
3. Unicode (UTF-16)
4. Western European/Latin-1 (ISO 8859-1)
5. Western European/Latin-1 (Windows CP1252)
6. Traditional Chinese (Big 5)
7. Simplified Chinese (GB 2312)
8. Simplified Chinese (HZ GB 2312)
11. Japanese (Shift-JIS (X0123))
13. Japanese (EUC)

Scan behavior changed.

There are currently 5 attachment type mappings configured to be SKIPPED.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Add a new entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- SETUP - Configure scanning behavior.
- IMPORT - Load mappings from a file.
- EXPORT - Save mappings to a file.
- PRINT - Display the list.
stripheaders

Description

Define a list of message headers to remove.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-144  stripheaders

mail3.example.com> stripheaders

Not currently stripping any headers.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Set message headers to remove.

[]> setup

Enter the list of headers you wish to strip from the messages before they are delivered. Separate multiple headers with commas.

[]> Delivered-To

Currently stripping headers: Delivered-To

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Set message headers to remove.

[]>

mail3.example.com>


textconfig

Description

Configure text resources such as anti-virus alert templates, message disclaimers, and notification templates, including DLP, bounce, and encryption notifications.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

Use `textconfig -> NEW` to create text resources, and `textconfig > delete` to remove them.

Table 3-145  `textconfig` - Create Text Resources

```
mail3.example.com> textconfig
```

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new text resource.
- IMPORT - Import a text resource from a file.

```
[1]> new
```

What kind of text resource would you like to create?

1. Anti-Virus Container Template
2. Anti-Virus Notification Template
3. DLP Notification Template
4. Bounce and Encryption Failure Notification Template
5. Message Disclaimer
6. Encryption Notification Template (HTML)
7. Encryption Notification Template (text)
8. Notification Template

```
[1]> 5
```

Please create a name for the message disclaimer:

```
[1]> disclaimer 1
```

Enter the encoding for the message disclaimer:

```
1. US-ASCII
```
Table 3-145  textconfig - Create Text Resources

2. Unicode (UTF-8)
3. Unicode (UTF-16)
4. Western European/Latin-1 (ISO 8859-1)
5. Western European/Latin-1 (Windows CP1252)
6. Traditional Chinese (Big 5)
7. Simplified Chinese (GB 2312)
8. Simplified Chinese (HZ GB 2312)
11. Japanese (Shift-JIS (X0123))
13. Japanese (EUC)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new text resource.
- IMPORT - Import a text resource from a file.
- EXPORT - Export text resource to a file.
- PRINT - Display the content of a resource.
- EDIT - Modify a resource.
Table 3-145  textconfig - Create Text Resources

- DELETE - Remove a resource from the system.
- LIST - List configured resources.

[]> delete

Please enter the name or number of the resource to delete:

[]> 1

Message disclaimer "disclaimer 1" has been deleted.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new text resource.
- IMPORT - Import a text resource from a file.

[]>

Use textconfig -> EDIT to modify an existing text resource. You can change the encoding or replace the text of the selected text resource.

Importing Text Resources

Use textconfig -> IMPORT to import a text file as a text resource. The text file must be present in the configuration directory on the appliance.

Table 3-146  textconfig - Importing a text file as a Text Resource

mail3.example.com> textconfig

Current Text Resources:

1. footer.2.message (Message Footer)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new text resource.
Table 3-146  textconfig - Importing a text file as a Text Resource  (Continued)

- IMPORT - Import a text resource from a file.
- EXPORT - Export text resource to a file.
- PRINT - Display the content of a resource.
- EDIT - Modify a resource.
- DELETE - Remove a resource from the system.
- LIST - List configured resources.

[]> import

What kind of text resource would you like to create?

1. Anti-Virus Container Template
2. Anti-Virus Notification Template
3. DLP Notification Template
4. Bounce and Encryption Failure Notification Template
5. Message Disclaimer
6. Encryption Notification Template (HTML)
7. Encryption Notification Template (text)
8. Notification Template

[1]> 8

Please create a name for the notification template:

[]> strip.mp3files

Enter the name of the file to import:

[]> strip.mp3.txt

Enter the encoding to use for the imported file:

1. US-ASCII
   [ list of encodings ]
Use `textconfig` -> EXPORT to export a text resource as a text file. The text file will be created in the configuration directory on the appliance.

**Exporting Text Resources**

Use `textconfig` -> EXPORT to export a text resource as a text file. The text file will be created in the configuration directory on the appliance.

**Table 3-147  textconfig - Exporting a Text Resource as a Text File**

```
mail3.example.com> textconfig
```

Current Text Resources:

1. footer.2.message (Message Footer)
2. strip.mp3 (Notification Template)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
Table 3-147  textconfig - Exporting a Text Resource as a Text File  (Continued)

- NEW - Create a new text resource.
- IMPORT - Import a text resource from a file.
- EXPORT - Export text resource to a file.
- PRINT - Display the content of a resource.
- EDIT - Modify a resource.
- DELETE - Remove a resource from the system.
- LIST - List configured resources.

[]\> export

Please enter the name or number of the resource to export:

[]\> 2

Enter the name of the file to export:

[strip.mp3]\> strip.mp3.txt

Enter the encoding to use for the exported file:

1. US-ASCII

[ list of encoding types ]

[1]\>

File written on machine "mail3.example.com" using us-ascii encoding.

Current Text Resources:
1. footer.2.message (Message Footer)
2. strip.mp3 (Notification Template)

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new text resource.
This section contains the following CLI commands:

- alertconfig
- grep
- logconfig
- rollovernow
- snmpconfig
- tail

### alertconfig

#### Description

Configure email alerts.

#### Usage

**Commit**: This command requires a 'commit'.

**Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.
Creating a New Alert and Alert Recipient via the CLI

In this example, a new alert recipient (alertadmin@example.com) is created and set to receive critical system, hardware, and directory harvest attack alerts. The seconds to wait before sending a duplicate alert is set to 360 and the email From: address is set to Alerts@example.com.

Table 3-148  alertconfig - Creating a New Alert and Alert Recipient

```
mail3.example.com> alertconfig

Sending alerts to:
  joe@example.com

  Class: All - Severities: All

Seconds to wait before sending a duplicate alert (seconds): 300

Alerts will be sent using the system-default From Address.

IronPort AutoSupport: Enabled

You will receive a copy of the weekly AutoSupport reports.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
  - NEW - Add a new email address to send alerts.
  - EDIT - Modify an email address.
  - DELETE - Remove an email address.
  - CLEAR - Remove all email addresses (disable alerts).
  - SETUP - Configure alert settings.
  - FROM - Configure the From Address of alert emails.

[]> new

Please enter a new email address to send alerts.

(Ex: "administrator@example.com")

[]> alertadmin@example.com
```
Choose the Alert Classes. Separate multiple choices with commas.

1. All
2. System
3. Hardware
4. Outbreak Filters
5. Anti-Virus
6. Anti-Spam
7. Directory Harvest Attack Prevention

[1]> 2, 3, 7

Select a Severity Level. Separate multiple choices with commas.

1. All
2. Critical
3. Warning
4. Information

[1]> 2

Sending alerts to:

joe@example.com
  Class: All - Severities: All

alertadmin@example.com
  Class: Hardware - Severities: Critical
  Class: Directory Harvest Attack Prevention - Severities: Critical
  Class: System - Severities: Critical

Seconds to wait before sending a duplicate alert (seconds): 300

Alerts will be sent using the system-default From Address.
IronPort AutoSupport: Enabled

You will receive a copy of the weekly AutoSupport reports.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Add a new email address to send alerts.
- EDIT - Modify an email address.
- DELETE - Remove an email address.
- CLEAR - Remove all email addresses (disable alerts).
- SETUP - Configure alert settings.
- FROM - Configure the From Address of alert emails.

[ ]> setup

Seconds to wait before sending a duplicate alert (seconds):

[300]> 360

Would you like to enable IronPort AutoSupport, which automatically emails system alerts and weekly status reports directly to IronPort Customer Care? (Enabling AutoSupport is recommended.) [Y]>

Would you like to receive a copy of the weekly AutoSupport reports? [Y]>

Sending alerts to:

joe@example.com

Class: All - Severities: All

alertadmin@example.com

Class: Hardware - Severities: Critical

Class: Directory Harvest Attack Prevention - Severities: Critical
Table 3-148  alertconfig - Creating a New Alert and Alert Recipient  (Continued)

Class: System - Severities: Critical

Seconds to wait before sending a duplicate alert (seconds): 360

Alerts will be sent using the system-default From Address.

IronPort AutoSupport: Enabled

You will receive a copy of the weekly AutoSupport reports.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Add a new email address to send alerts.
- EDIT - Modify an email address.
- DELETE - Remove an email address.
- CLEAR - Remove all email addresses (disable alerts).
- SETUP - Configure alert settings.
- FROM - Configure the From Address of alert emails.

[]> from

Alerts will be sent using the system-default From Address.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- EDIT - Edit the From Address.

[]> edit

Please enter the From Address to use for alerts.

[]> Alerts@example.com

Sending alerts to:
**grep**

**Description**

Searches for text in a log file.
Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto). This command requires access to the local file system.

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
The grep command can be used to search for text strings within logs. Use the following syntax when you run the grep command:

```
grep [-C count] [-e regex] [-i] [-p] [-t] [regex] log_name
```

Note

You must enter either `-e regex` or `regex` to return results.

Use the following options when you run the `grep` command:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>-C</code></td>
<td>Provides lines of context around the grep pattern found. Enter a value to specify the number of lines to include.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-e</code></td>
<td>Enter a regular expression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-i</code></td>
<td>Ignores case sensitivities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-p</code></td>
<td>Paginates the output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-t</code></td>
<td>Runs the grep command over the tail of the log file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>regex</code></td>
<td>Enter a regular expression.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example of grep

The following example shows a search for the text string ‘clean’ or ‘viral’ within the antivirus logs. The grep command includes a regex expression:

```
mail3.example.com> grep "CLEAN\|VIRAL" antivirus
```

Fri Jun 9 21:50:25 2006 Info: sophos antivirus - MID 1 - Result 'CLEAN' ()
Fri Jun 9 21:53:15 2006 Info: sophos antivirus - MID 2 - Result 'CLEAN' ()
Fri Jun 9 22:47:41 2006 Info: sophos antivirus - MID 3 - Result 'CLEAN' ()
Fri Jun 9 22:47:41 2006 Info: sophos antivirus - MID 4 - Result 'CLEAN' ()
Table 3-150  grep-Search for Text in a Log File

Fri Jun 9 22:47:41 2006  Info: sophos antivirus - MID 5 - Result 'CLEAN' ()
Fri Jun 9 22:47:41 2006  Info: sophos antivirus - MID 6 - Result 'CLEAN' ()
Fri Jun 9 22:47:42 2006  Info: sophos antivirus - MID 12 - Result 'CLEAN' ()
Fri Jun 9 22:53:04 2006  Info: sophos antivirus - MID 18 - Result 'VIRAL' ()
Fri Jun 9 22:53:05 2006  Info: sophos antivirus - MID 16 - Result 'VIRAL' ()
Fri Jun 9 22:53:06 2006  Info: sophos antivirus - MID 19 - Result 'VIRAL' ()
Fri Jun 9 22:53:07 2006  Info: sophos antivirus - MID 21 - Result 'VIRAL' ()
Fri Jun 9 22:53:08 2006  Info: sophos antivirus - MID 20 - Result 'VIRAL' ()
Fri Jun 9 22:53:08 2006  Info: sophos antivirus - MID 22 - Result 'VIRAL' ()

logconfig

Description

Configure access to log files.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a 'commit'.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example of FTP Push Log Subscription

In the following example, the logconfig command is used to configure a new delivery log called myDeliveryLogs. The log is then configured to be pushed via FTP to a remote host

Table 3-151  logconfig - Configuring a New Delivery Log

mail3.example.com> logconfig

Currently configured logs:

1. "antispam" Type: "Anti-Spam Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
2. "antivirus" Type: "Anti-Virus Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
Table 3-151  logconfig - Configuring a New Delivery Log  (Continued)

3. "asarchive" Type: "Anti-Spam Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
5. "avarchive" Type: "Anti-Virus Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
6. "bounces" Type: "Bounce Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
7. "cli_logs" Type: "CLI Audit Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
8. "encryption" Type: "Encryption Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
9. "error_logs" Type: "IronPort Text Mail Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
10. "euq_logs" Type: "IronPort Spam Quarantine Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
11. "euqgui_logs" Type: "IronPort Spam Quarantine GUI Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
12. "ftpd_logs" Type: "FTP Server Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
13. "gui_logs" Type: "HTTP Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
14. "mail_logs" Type: "IronPort Text Mail Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
15. "reportd_logs" Type: "Reporting Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
16. "reportqueryd_logs" Type: "Reporting Query Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
17. "scanning" Type: "Scanning Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
18. "slbld_logs" Type: "Safe/Block Lists Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
19. "sntpd_logs" Type: "NTP logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
20. "status" Type: "Status Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
22. "trackerd_logs" Type: "Tracking Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
23. "updater_logs" Type: "Updater Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new log.
- EDIT - Modify a log subscription.
- DELETE - Remove a log subscription.
- SETUP - General settings.
- LOGHEADERS - Configure headers to log.
Choose the log file type for this subscription:

1. IronPort Text Mail Logs
2. qmail Format Mail Logs
3. Delivery Logs
4. Bounce Logs
5. Status Logs
6. Domain Debug Logs
7. Injection Debug Logs
8. SMTP Conversation Logs
9. System Logs
10. CLI Audit Logs
11. FTP Server Logs
12. HTTP Logs
13. NTP logs
14. LDAP Debug Logs
15. Anti-Spam Logs
16. Anti-Spam Archive
17. Anti-Virus Logs
18. Anti-Virus Archive
19. Scanning Logs
20. IronPort Spam Quarantine Logs
21. IronPort Spam Quarantine GUI Logs
22. Reporting Logs
23. Reporting Query Logs
24. Updater Logs
25. Tracking Logs
26. Safe/Block Lists Logs
27. Authentication Logs

Please enter the name for the log:

[]> myDeliveryLogs

Choose the method to retrieve the logs.

1. FTP Poll
2. FTP Push
3. SCP Push
4. Syslog Push

[]> 2
Hostname to deliver the logs:

\[
\text{yourhost.example.com}
\]

Username on the remote host:

\[
\text{yourusername}
\]

Password for youruser:

\[
\text{thepassword}
\]

Directory on remote host to place logs:

\[
\text{/logs}
\]

Filename to use for log files:

\[
\text{conversation.text}
\]

Maximum time to wait before transferring:

\[
3600
\]

Maximum filesize before transferring:

\[
10485760
\]

Currently configured logs:

1. "antispam" Type: "Anti-Spam Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
2. "antivirus" Type: "Anti-Virus Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
3. "asarchive" Type: "Anti-Spam Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
5. "avarchive" Type: "Anti-Virus Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
Example of SCP Push Log Subscription

In the following example, the `logconfig` command is used to configure a new delivery log called LogPush. The log is configured to be pushed via SCP to a remote host with the IP address of 10.1.1.1, as the user logger, and stored in the directory `/tmp`. Note that the `sshconfig` command is automatically called from within the `logconfig` command when the log retrieval method is SCP push. (See
“Configuring Host Keys” for information about Host keys, and “Managing Secure Shell (SSH) Keys” for more information about User keys, in the user guide for your AsyncOS release.) Also note that an IP address can be used at the hostname prompt.

**Table 3-152 logconfig - Creating a SCP ‘Push’ Delivery Log**

```
mail3.example.com> logconfig
```

Currently configured logs:

1. "antispam" Type: "Anti-Spam Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
2. "antivirus" Type: "Anti-Virus Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
3. "asarchive" Type: "Anti-Spam Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
5. "avarchive" Type: "Anti-Virus Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
6. "bounces" Type: "Bounce Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
7. "cli_logs" Type: "CLI Audit Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
8. "encryption" Type: "Encryption Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
9. "error_logs" Type: "IronPort Text Mail Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
10. "euq_logs" Type: "IronPort Spam Quarantine Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
11. "euqgui_logs" Type: "IronPort Spam Quarantine GUI Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
12. "ftpd_logs" Type: "FTP Server Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
13. "gui_logs" Type: "HTTP Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
14. "mail_logs" Type: "IronPort Text Mail Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
15. "reportd_logs" Type: "Reporting Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
16. "reportqueryd_logs" Type: "Reporting Query Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
17. "scanning" Type: "Scanning Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
18. "slbld_logs" Type: "Safe/Block Lists Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
19. "sntpd_logs" Type: "NTP logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
20. "status" Type: "Status Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
22. "trackerd_logs" Type: "Tracking Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
23. "updater_logs" Type: "Updater Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new log.
- EDIT - Modify a log subscription.
- DELETE - Remove a log subscription.
- SETUP - General settings.
- LOGHEADERS - Configure headers to log.
- HOSTKEYCONFIG - Configure SSH host keys.

[]> **new**

Choose the log file type for this subscription:

1. IronPort Text Mail Logs
2. qmail Format Mail Logs
3. Delivery Logs
4. Bounce Logs
5. Status Logs
6. Domain Debug Logs
7. Injection Debug Logs
8. SMTP Conversation Logs
9. System Logs
10. CLI Audit Logs
11. FTP Server Logs
12. HTTP Logs
13. NTP logs
14. LDAP Debug Logs
15. Anti-Spam Logs
16. Anti-Spam Archive
17. Anti-Virus Logs
18. Anti-Virus Archive
19. Scanning Logs
20. IronPort Spam Quarantine Logs
21. IronPort Spam Quarantine GUI Logs
22. Reporting Logs
23. Reporting Query Logs
24. Updater Logs
25. Tracking Logs
26. Safe/Block Lists Logs
27. Authentication Logs

[1]> **3**

Please enter the name for the log:

[1]> **LogPush**
Table 3-152  logconfig - Creating a SCP ‘Push’ Delivery Log (Continued)

Choose the method to retrieve the logs.

1. FTP Poll
2. FTP Push
3. SCP Push

[1]> 3

Hostname to deliver the logs:

[]> 10.1.1.1

Port to connect to on the remote host:

[22]> 22

Username on the remote host:

[]> logger

Directory on remote host to place logs:

[]> /tmp

Filename to use for log files:

[delivery.log]> delivery.log

Maximum time to wait before transferring:

[3600]> 3600

Maximum filesize before transferring:

[10485760]> 10485760


Protocol:
1. SSH1
2. SSH2

[2]> 2

Do you want to enable host key checking? [N]> y

Do you want to automatically scan the host for its SSH key, or enter it manually?
1. Automatically scan.
2. Enter manually.

[1]> 1

SSH2:dsa

10.1.1.1 ssh-dss
AAAAB3NzaC1kc3MAAACCBALwG14l1lWLDbiIwEaArt9LVE2ts5ye9jBTSdUwLvoqDG3tR9ifcrce92zgyH
tc/ZWyXavUTIM3XdbPiEcsnM2xPkpSNpPX2ly8bqKpJsSCQcM8zZMDjnOpm8gihwHXY?0NEUJCCPnPx
Ay44r1J5Yz4x9eALp0dHUOGc+j1NAAAAPQIDqI5GY/X9P1DM3fPMvEx7wc0edl1wAAAIB9cMTEFP1WTA
Gr1Rtbw25zWZtVUTbLhdX2jio4+bB4hBR7DKuc80+naAFlhThyH/J8R3W1JVF79M5geKJbZzuJGDK3z
13UyepPqgPq201izLRQSJYx1WwYr/roooqN1BnF4sh12mtdq212176bogtwQa4K015k3z0WwPwAA
IA1cKYa3+y+BiV/V6w5BBxk0f4WMbkk9G06EQi8nss82ozmWBY/p1TRQf3h4MBmlx
TP4YF100sARe2tuUJC1QQVXYGh7Nd3YNaes2CSbEKBEaITF6+5X2RNPcUF3y5ygw92xtqQPKMcZeLt
K2zJRKhC+Vw==

Add the preceding host key(s) for 10.1.1.1? [Y]> y

Currently installed host keys:
1. 10.1.1.1 1024 35 12260642076447444117847407996206675325...3520565607
2. 10.1.1.1 ssh-dss AAAAB3NzaC1kc3MAAACCBALwG14l1lWLDbiIwE...JRKhC+Vw==

Choose the operation you want to perform:
Table 3-152 logconfig - Creating a SCP 'Push' Delivery Log (Continued)

- NEW - Add a new key.
- EDIT - Modify a key.
- DELETE - Remove a key.
- SCAN - Automatically download a host key.
- PRINT - Display a key.
- HOST - Display this machine’s host keys.

[>]  
Maximum filesize before transferring:

[10485760]>

Protocol:
1. SSH1
2. SSH2

[2]>

Do you want to enable host key checking? [N]> y

Currently installed host keys:

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Add a new key.
- SCAN - Automatically download a host key.
- HOST - Display this machine’s host keys.

[>] scan

Choose the ssh protocol type:
1. SSH1:rsa
2. SSH2:rsa
Example of Syslog Push Log Subscription

In the following example, the *logconfig* command is used to configure a new delivery log called MailLogSyslogPush. The log is configured to be pushed to a remote syslog server with the IP address of 10.1.1.2, using UPD, with a 'mail' facility and stored in the directory.

```
Table 3-153  logconfig - Creating a SCP 'Push' Delivery Log

mail3.example.com> logconfig

Currently configured logs:

1. "antispam" Type: "Anti-Spam Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
2. "antivirus" Type: "Anti-Virus Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
3. "asarchive" Type: "Anti-Spam Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
5. "avarchive" Type: "Anti-Virus Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
6. "bounces" Type: "Bounce Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
7. "cli_logs" Type: "CLI Audit Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
8. "encryption" Type: "Encryption Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
9. "error_logs" Type: "IronPort Text Mail Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
10. "euq_logs" Type: "IronPort Spam Quarantine Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
11. "euqgui_logs" Type: "IronPort Spam Quarantine GUI Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
12. "ftpd_logs" Type: "FTP Server Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
```

```bash
3. SSH2:dsa
4. All

[4]> 4

SSH1:rsa

10.1.1.1 1024 35
12260642076447441178474079962066753259278682648965870690129496065430424463013457
294798980627829828033793152226444694514316218272814453986931612508282328008815740
0721099756323564785532128816187806830746328234327778100131128176672666244511191783
747965898000855947022484692079466697707373948871554575173520565607
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Log Type</th>
<th>Retrieval Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>gui_logs Type: &quot;HTTP Logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>mail_logs Type: &quot;IronPort Text Mail Logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>reportd_logs Type: &quot;Reporting Logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>reportqueryd_logs Type: &quot;Reporting Query Logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>scanning Type: &quot;Scanning Logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>slbld_logs Type: &quot;Safe/Block Lists Logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>sntpd_logs Type: &quot;NTP logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>status Type: &quot;Status Logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>system_logs Type: &quot;System Logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>trackerd_logs Type: &quot;Tracking Logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>updater_logs Type: &quot;Updater Logs&quot;</td>
<td>FTP Poll</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- **NEW** - Create a new log.
- **EDIT** - Modify a log subscription.
- **DELETE** - Remove a log subscription.
- **SETUP** - General settings.
- **LOGHEADERS** - Configure headers to log.
- **HOSTKEYCONFIG** - Configure SSH host keys.

[1]> **new**
Choose the log file type for this subscription:
1. IronPort Text Mail Logs
2. qmail Format Mail Logs
3. Delivery Logs
4. Bounce Logs
5. Status Logs
6. Domain Debug Logs
7. Injection Debug Logs
8. SMTP Conversation Logs
9. System Logs
10. CLI Audit Logs
11. FTP Server Logs
12. HTTP Logs
13. NTP logs
14. LDAP Debug Logs
15. Anti-Spam Logs
16. Anti-Spam Archive
17. Anti-Virus Logs
18. Anti-Virus Archive
19. Scanning Logs
20. IronPort Spam Quarantine Logs
21. IronPort Spam Quarantine GUI Logs
22. Reporting Logs
23. Reporting Query Logs
24. Updater Logs
25. Tracking Logs
26. Safe/Block Lists Logs
27. Authentication Logs

Please enter the name for the log:


Log level:
1. Critical
2. Warning
3. Information
4. Debug
5. Trace

[3]> 2

Choose the method to retrieve the logs.

1. FTP Poll
2. FTP Push
3. SCP Push
4. Syslog Push

[1]> 4
**rollovernow**

**Description**

Roll over a log file.

**Usage**

**Commit**: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management**: This command is restricted to machine mode.

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

---

Table 3-153  logconfig - Creating a SCP 'Push' Delivery Log (Continued)

Hostname to deliver the logs:

[]> 10.1.1.2

Which protocol do you want to use to transfer the log data?

1. UDP
2. TCP

[1]> 1

Which facility do you want the log data to be sent as?

1. auth
2. authpriv
3. console
4. daemon
5. ftp
6. local0
7. local1
8. local2
9. local3
10. local4
11. local5
12. local6
13. local7
14. mail
15. ntp
16. security
17. user

[14]> 14

Currently configured logs:
Currently configured logs:

1. "antispam" Type: "Anti-Spam Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
2. "antivirus" Type: "Anti-Virus Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
3. "asarchive" Type: "Anti-Spam Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
5. "avarchive" Type: "Anti-Virus Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
6. "bounces" Type: "Bounce Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
7. "cli_logs" Type: "CLI Audit Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
8. "encryption" Type: "Encryption Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
9. "error_logs" Type: "IronPort Text Mail Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
10. "euq_logs" Type: "IronPort Spam Quarantine Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
11. "euqgui_logs" Type: "IronPort Spam Quarantine GUI Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
12. "ftpd_logs" Type: "FTP Server Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
13. "gui_logs" Type: "HTTP Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
14. "mail_logs" Type: "IronPort Text Mail Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
15. "reportd_logs" Type: "Reporting Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
16. "reportqueryd_logs" Type: "Reporting Query Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
17. "scanning" Type: "Scanning Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
18. "slbld_logs" Type: "Safe/Block Lists Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
19. "sntpd_logs" Type: "NTP logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
20. "status" Type: "Status Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
22. "trackerd_logs" Type: "Tracking Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
snmpconfig

Description

Configure SNMP.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

In the following example, the snmpconfig command is used to enable SNMP on the “PublicNet” interface on port 161. A passphrase for version 3 is entered and then re-entered for confirmation. The system is configured to service version 1 and 2 requests, and the community string public is entered for GET requests from those versions 1 and 2. The trap target of snmp-monitor.example.com is entered. Finally, system location and contact information is entered.

Table 3-154 snmpconfig

mail3.example.com> snmpconfig

Current SNMP settings:

SNMP Disabled.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Configure SNMP.
Do you want to enable SNMP? [N]> y

Please choose an IP interface for SNMP requests.
1. Data 1 (192.168.1.1/24: buttercup.run)
2. Data 2 (192.168.2.1/24: buttercup.run)
3. Management (192.168.44.44/24: buttercup.run)
[1]> 

Enter the SNMPv3 passphrase.
>
Please enter the SNMPv3 passphrase again to confirm.
>
Which port shall the SNMP daemon listen on?
[161]> 

Service SNMP V1/V2c requests? [N]> y

Enter the SNMP V1/V2c community string.
[]> public

From which network shall SNMP V1/V2c requests be allowed?
[192.168.2.0/24]> 

Enter the Trap target (IP address). Enter "None" to disable traps.
[None]> snmp-monitor.example.com
Enterprise Trap Status

1. RAIDStatusChange   Enabled
2. fanFailure         Enabled
3. highTemperature    Enabled
4. keyExpiration      Enabled
5. linkDown           Enabled
6. linkUp             Enabled
7. powerSupplyStatusChange Enabled
8. resourceConservationMode Enabled
9. updateFailure      Enabled

Do you want to change any of these settings? [N]> y

Do you want to disable any of these traps? [Y]>

Enter number or numbers of traps to disable. Separate multiple numbers with commas.

[]> 1,8

Enterprise Trap Status

1. RAIDStatusChange   Disabled
2. fanFailure         Enabled
3. highTemperature    Enabled
4. keyExpiration      Enabled
5. linkDown           Enabled
6. linkUp             Enabled
7. powerSupplyStatusChange Enabled
8. resourceConservationMode Disabled
9. updateFailure      Enabled
Table 3-155  

Do you want to change any of these settings? [N]>

Enter the System Location string.

[Unknown: Not Yet Configured] > Network Operations Center - west; rack #31, position 2

Enter the System Contact string.

[snmp@localhost] > Joe Administrator, x8888

Current SNMP settings:

Listening on interface "Data 1" 192.168.2.1/24 port 161.

SNMP v3: Enabled.

SNMP v1/v2: Enabled, accepting requests from subnet 192.168.2.0/24.

SNMP v1/v2 Community String: public

Trap target: snmp-monitor.example.com

Location: Network Operations Center - west; rack #31, position 2

System Contact: Joe Administrator, x8888

mail3.example.com>

tail

Description

Continuously display the end of a log file. The tail command also accepts the name or number of a log to view as a parameter: tail 9 or tail mail_logs.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto). This command requires access to the local file system.

Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-156  tail

mail3.example.com> tail

Currently configured logs:
1. "antispam" Type: "Anti-Spam Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
2. "antivirus" Type: "Anti-Virus Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
3. "asarchive" Type: "Anti-Spam Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
5. "avarchive" Type: "Anti-Virus Archive" Retrieval: FTP Poll
6. "bounces" Type: "Bounce Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
7. "cli_logs" Type: "CLI Audit Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
8. "encryption" Type: "Encryption Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
9. "error_logs" Type: "IronPort Text Mail Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
10. "euq_logs" Type: "IronPort Spam Quarantine Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
11. "euqgui_logs" Type: "IronPort Spam Quarantine GUI Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
12. "ftpd_logs" Type: "FTP Server Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
13. "gui_logs" Type: "HTTP Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
14. "mail_logs" Type: "IronPort Text Mail Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
15. "reportd_logs" Type: "Reporting Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
16. "reportqueryd_logs" Type: "Reporting Query Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
17. "scanning" Type: "Scanning Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
18. "slbld_logs" Type: "Safe/Block Lists Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
19. "sntpd_logs" Type: "NTP logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
20. "status" Type: "Status Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
22. "trackerd_logs" Type: "Tracking Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll
23. "updater_logs" Type: "Updater Logs" Retrieval: FTP Poll

Enter the number of the log you wish to tail.
Table 3-156  tail (Continued)

[>] 19

Press Ctrl-C to stop.


Sat May 15 23:18:10 2008 Info: PID 19626: User admin commit changes:

Sat May 15 23:18:10 2008 Info: PID 274: User system commit changes: Updated filter logs config


Sat May 15 23:48:17 2008 Info: PID 25696: User admin commit changes:

Sun May 16 00:00:00 2008 Info: Generated report: name b, start time Sun May 16 00:00:00 2004, size 2154 bytes

*mail3.example.com*
**reportingconfig**

**Using the reportingconfig command**

The following subcommands are available within the reportingconfig submenu:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Availability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>filters</td>
<td>Configure filters for the Security Management appliance.</td>
<td>M-Series only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alert_timeout</td>
<td>Configure when you will be alerted due to failing to get reporting data.</td>
<td>M-Series only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domain</td>
<td>Configure domain report settings.</td>
<td>M-Series only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode</td>
<td>Enable centralized reporting on the Security Management appliance.</td>
<td>C-, M-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enable centralized or local reporting for the Email Security appliance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mailsetup</td>
<td>Configure reporting for the Email Security appliance.</td>
<td>C-Series only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’. 
Example: Enabling Reporting Filters (M-Series only)

Table 3-158 reportingconfig - Enabling reporting filters

mail3.example.com> reportingconfig

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- FILTERS - Configure filtering for the SMA.
- ALERT_TIMEOUT - Configure when you will be alerted due to failing to get reporting data
- DOMAIN - Configure domain report settings.
- MODE - Enable/disable centralized reporting.

[]> filters

Filters remove specific sets of centralized reporting data from the "last year" reports. Data from the reporting groups selected below will not be recorded.

All filtering has been disabled.

1. No Filtering enabled
2. IP Connection Level Detail.
3. User Detail.
4. Mail Traffic Detail.

Choose which groups to filter, you can specify multiple filters by entering a comma separated list:

[]> 2, 3

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- FILTERS - Configure filtering for the SMA.
- ALERT_TIMEOUT - Configure when you will be alerted due to failing to get
**Table 3-158  reportingconfig - Enabling reporting filters**

- **DOMAIN** - Configure domain report settings.
- **MODE** - Enable/disable centralized reporting.

```text
[]>
```
Enabling HAT REJECT Information for Domain Reports (M-Series only)

Table 3-159  reportingconfig - Enabling HAT REJECT information for domain reports

mail3.example.com> reportingconfig

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- FILTERS - Configure filtering for the SMA.
- ALERT_TIMEOUT - Configure when you will be alerted due to failing to get reporting data
- DOMAIN - Configure domain report settings.
- MODE - Enable/disable centralized reporting.

[]> domain

If you have configured HAT REJECT policy on all remote appliances providing reporting data to this appliance to occur at the message recipient level then of domain reports.

Use message recipient HAT REJECT information for domain reports? [N]> y

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- FILTERS - Configure filtering for the SMA.
- ALERT_TIMEOUT - Configure when you will be alerted due to failing to get reporting data
- DOMAIN - Configure domain report settings.
- MODE - Enable/disable centralized reporting.

[]>

Enabling Timeout Alerts (M-Series only)

Table 3-160  reportingconfig - Enabling timeout alerts

mail3.example.com> reportingconfig
Choose the operation you want to perform:

- FILTERS - Configure filtering for the SMA.
- ALERT_TIMEOUT - Configure when you will be alerted due to failing to get reporting data
- DOMAIN - Configure domain report settings.
- MODE - Enable/disable centralized reporting.

[>] alert_timeout

An alert will be sent if reporting data has not been fetched from an appliance after 360 minutes.

Would you like timeout alerts to be enabled? [Y]> y

After how many minutes should an alert be sent?

[360]> 240
Enabling Centralized Reporting for an Email Security Appliance

Table 3-161  \texttt{reportingconfig} - Enabling centralized reporting

mail3.example.com> \texttt{reportingconfig}

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- \texttt{MAILSETUP} - Configure reporting for the ESA.
- \texttt{MODE} - Enable centralized or local reporting for the ESA.

[>] \texttt{mode}

Centralized reporting: Local reporting only.

Do you want to enable centralized reporting? \texttt{[N]}> \texttt{y}

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- \texttt{MAILSETUP} - Configure reporting for the ESA.
- \texttt{MODE} - Enable centralized or local reporting for the ESA.

[>]

Configure Storage Limit for Reporting Data (C-Series only)

Table 3-162  \texttt{reportingconfig} - Configure storage limit for centralized reporting data

esa01-vmwl-tpub.qa> \texttt{reportingconfig}

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- \texttt{MAILSETUP} - Configure reporting for the ESA.
- \texttt{MODE} - Enable centralized or local reporting for the ESA.

[>] \texttt{mailsetup}
Table 3-162  \texttt{reportingconfig} - Configure storage limit for centralized reporting data

SenderBase timeout used by the web interface: 5 seconds
Sender Reputation Multiplier: 3
The current level of reporting data recording is: unlimited
No custom second level domains are defined.
Legacy mailflow report: Disabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SENDERBASE - Configure SenderBase timeout for the web interface.
- MULTIPLIER - Configure Sender Reputation Multiplier.
- COUNTERS - Limit counters recorded by the reporting system.
- THROTTLING - Limit unique hosts tracked for rejected connection reporting.
- TLD - Add customer specific domains for reporting rollup.
- STORAGE - How long centralized reporting data will be stored on the C-series before being overwritten.
- LEGACY - Configure legacy mailflow report.

[> storage

While in centralized mode the C-series will store reporting data for the M-series to collect. If the M-series does not collect that data then eventually the C-series will begin to overwrite the oldest data with new data.

A maximum of 24 hours of reporting data will be stored.

How many hours of reporting data should be stored before data loss?

[24]> 48

SenderBase timeout used by the web interface: 5 seconds
Sender Reputation Multiplier: 3
This section contains the following CLI commands:

- sbstatus
- senderbaseconfig

**sbstatus**

**Description**

Display status of SenderBase queries.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a `commit`.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

*Table 3-163  *sbstatus - Success*

```plaintext
mail3.example.com> sbstatus

SenderBase host status
Status as of: Tue Oct 21 10:55:04 2003
Host up/down: up
```

If the appliance is unable to contact the SenderBase Reputation Service, or the service has never been contacted, the following is displayed:

*Table 3-164  *sbstatus - Failure*

```plaintext
mail3.example.com> sbstatus

SenderBase host status
Host up/down: Unknown (never contacted)
```

**senderbaseconfig**

**Description**

Configure SenderBase connection settings.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-165  senderbaseconfig

ail3.example.com> senderbaseconfig

Share statistics with SenderBase Information Service: Enabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Configure SenderBase Network Participation settings

[>] setup

Do you want to share statistical data with the SenderBase Information Service (recommended)? [Y>]

Share statistics with SenderBase Information Service: Enabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- SETUP - Configure SenderBase Network Participation settings

[>]

SMTP Services Configuration

This section contains the following CLI commands:
- listenerconfig
- localeconfig
- smtpauthconfig

listenerconfig

Description

The listenerconfig command allows you to create, edit, and delete a listener. AsyncOS requires that you specify criteria that messages must meet in order to be accepted and then relayed to recipient hosts — either internal to your network or to external recipients on the Internet.
These qualifying criteria are defined in listeners; collectively, they define and enforce your mail flow policies. Listeners also define how the appliance communicates with the system that is injecting email.

### Table 3-166 listenerconfig Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Unique nickname you supply for the listener, for future reference. The names you define for listeners are case-sensitive. AsyncOS does not allow you to create two identical listener names.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP Interface</td>
<td>Listeners are assigned to IP interfaces. All IP interfaces must be configured using the systemstartup command or the interfaceconfig command before you create and assign a listener to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail protocol</td>
<td>The mail protocol is used for email receiving: either ESMTP or QMQP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Port</td>
<td>The specific IP port used for connections to the listener. By default SMTP uses port 25 and QMQP uses port 628.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Public and private listeners are used for most configurations. By convention, private listeners are intended to be used for private (internal) networks, while public listeners contain default characteristics for receiving email from the Internet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private</td>
<td>“Blackhole” listeners can be used for testing or troubleshooting purposes. When you create a blackhole listener, you choose whether messages are written to disk or not before they are deleted. (See Chapter 9, “Testing and Troubleshooting” of the AsyncOS Advanced User Guide for more information.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command supports a batch format.

### Batch Format - General listenerconfig

The batch format of the listenerconfig command can be used to add and delete listeners on a particular interface. The batch format of the listenerconfig command also allows you to configure a listener’s HAT and RAT.
• Adding a new listener:

   listenerconfig new <name> <public|private|blackhole|blackholequeueing> <interface_name> <smtp|qmqp>

• Deleting a listener:

   listenerconfig delete <name>

**Batch Format - HAT**

The following examples demonstrate the use of the batch format of listenerconfig to perform various HAT-related tasks. For more information about arguments, consult Table 3-167, “listenerconfig Argument Values -HAT,” on page 376

• Adding a new sendergroup to the HAT

   listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess new sendergroup <name> <host_list> <behavior> [options [--comments]]

• Add a new policy to the HAT

   listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess new policy <name> <behavior> [options]

• Add a new host list to a sendergroup

   listenerconfig edit sendergroup <name> hostaccess edit sendergroup <name> new <host_list>

• Delete a host from a sendergroup

   listenerconfig edit sendergroup <name> hostaccess edit sendergroup <name> delete <host>

• Move a host in a sendergroup’s list order

   listenerconfig edit sendergroup <name> hostaccess edit sendergroup <name> move <host> <host-to-insert-before>

• Modify a sendergroup’s policy

   listenerconfig edit sendergroup <name> hostaccess edit sendergroup <name> policy <behavior> [options]

• Print a sendergroup listing

   listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess edit sendergroup <name> print
- Rename a sendergroup
  
  `listenerconfig edit sendergroup <name> hostaccess edit sendergroup <name> rename <name>`

- Editing a HAT’s policy
  
  `listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess edit policy <name> <behavior> [options]`

- Deleting a sendergroup from a HAT
  
  `listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess delete sendergroup <name>`

- Deleting a policy
  
  `listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess delete policy <name>`

- Moving a sendergroup’s position in the HAT
  
  `listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess move <group> <group-to-insert-before>`

- Changing a HAT default option
  
  `listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess default [options]`

- Printing the hostaccess table
  
  `listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess print`

- Import a local copy of a HAT
  
  `listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess import <filename>`

- Exporting a copy of the HAT from the appliance
  
  `listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess export <filename>`

- Deleting all user defined sendergroups and policies from the HAT
  
  `listenerconfig edit <name> hostaccess clear`
### Table 3-167  
**listenerconfig Argument Values -HAT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;behavior&gt;</td>
<td>“Accept”, “Relay”, “Reject”, “TCP Refuse”, or “Continue”. When selecting a behavior for use with a sendergroup, additional behaviors of the form “Policy: FOO” are available (where “FOO” is the name of policy).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;filename&gt;</td>
<td>The filename to use with importing and exporting the hostaccess tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;group&gt;</td>
<td>A sendergroup &lt;name&gt;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;host&gt;</td>
<td>A single entity of a &lt;host_list&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;host_list&gt;</td>
<td>Enter the hosts to add. Hosts can be formatted as follows: CIDR addresses (10.1.1.0/24) IP address ranges (10.1.1.10-20) IP Subnets (10.2.3) Hostname (crm.example.com) Partial Hostname (.example.com) Sender Base Reputation Score range (7.5:10.0) Senderbase Network Owner IDS (SBO:12345) Remote blacklist queries (dnslist[query.blacklist.example]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;name&gt;</td>
<td>The name of the sendergroup or policy. HAT labels must start with a letter or underscore, followed by any number of letters, numbers, underscores or hyphens.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**  Separate multiple hosts with commas
### Table 3-167 listenerconfig Argument Values -HAT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--max_size</td>
<td>Maximum message size. Add a trailing <code>k</code> for kilobytes, <code>M</code> for megabytes, or no letters for bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--max_conn</td>
<td>Maximum number of connections allowed from a single host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--max_msgs</td>
<td>Maximum number of messages per connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--max_rcpt</td>
<td>Maximum number of recipients per message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--override</td>
<td>Override the hostname in the SMTP banner. “No” or SMTP banner string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--cust_acc</td>
<td>Specify a custom SMTP acceptance response. “No” or SMTP acceptance response string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--acc_code</td>
<td>Custom SMTP acceptance response code. Default is 220.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--cust_rej</td>
<td>Specify a custom SMTP rejection response. “No” or SMTP rejection response string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--rej_code</td>
<td>Custom SMTP rejection response code. Default is 554.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--rate_lim</td>
<td>Enable rate limiting per host. “No”, “default” or maximum number of recipients per hour per host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--cust_lim</td>
<td>Specify a custom SMTP limit exceeded response message. “No” or SMTP rejection response string. Default is “No”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--lim_code</td>
<td>Custom SMTP limit exceeded response code. Default is 452.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--use_sb</td>
<td>Use SenderBase for flow control by default. “Yes”, “No”, or “default”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--as_scan</td>
<td>Enable anti-spam scanning. “Yes”, “No”, “Default”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--av_scan</td>
<td>Enable anti-virus scanning. “Yes”, “No”, “Default”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--dhap</td>
<td>Directory Harvest Attack Prevention. “No”, “default”, or maximum number of invalid recipients per hour from a remote host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--tls</td>
<td>Not supported; use menuing system to configure TLS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--sig_bits</td>
<td>Number of bits of IP address to treat as significant. From 0 to 32, “No” or “default”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--dkim_verification</td>
<td>Enable DKIM verification. “Yes”, “No”, “Default.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--dkim_verification_profile &lt;name&gt;</td>
<td>The name of DKIM verification profile. This option is only applicable if --dkim_verification value is set to “Yes.”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Batch Format - RAT

The following examples demonstrate the use of the batch format of listenerconfig to perform various RAT-related tasks. For more information about arguments, consult Table 3-168, “listenerconfig Argument Values - RAT,” on page 379.

- Adding a new recipient to the RAT

  ```
  listenerconfig edit <name> rcptaccess new <rat_addr> [options]
  ```

- Editing a recipient in the RAT

  ```
  listenerconfig edit <name> rcptaccess edit <rat_addr> [options]
  ```

- Deleting a recipient from the RAT

  ```
  listenerconfig edit <name> rcptaccess delete <rat_addr>
  ```

- Printing a copy of the RAT

  ```
  listenerconfig edit <name> rcptaccess print
  ```

- Importing a local RAT to your appliance

  ```
  listenerconfig edit <name> rcptaccess import <filename>
  ```
- Exporting a RAT

  \texttt{listenerconfig\ edit\ <name>\ rcptaccess\ export\ <filename>}

- Clearing the default access

  \texttt{listenerconfig\ edit\ <name>\ rcptaccess\ clear\ <default\_access>}

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\caption{\texttt{listenerconfig Argument Values - RAT}}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Argument} & \textbf{Description} \\
\hline
<rat\_addr> & Enter the hosts to add. Hosts can be formatted as follows:
CIDR addresses (10.1.1.0/24)
Hostname (crm.example.com)
Partial Hostname (.example.com)
Usernames (postmaster@)
Full email addresses (joe@example.com, joe@[1.2.3.4])
\textbf{Note} Separate multiple hosts with commas \\
\hline
<options> & --action Action to apply to address(es). Either “Accept” or “Reject”. Default is “Accept”.
--cust\_resp Specify a custom SMTP response. “No” or SMTP acceptance response string.
--resp\_code Custom SMTP response code. Default is 250 for “Accept” actions, 550 for “Reject”.
--bypass\_rc Bypass receiving control. Default is “No”.
--bypass\_la Bypass LDAP Accept query. Either “Yes” or “No”.
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

**Example - Adding a listener**

In the following example, the \texttt{listenerconfig} command is used to create a new private listener called OutboundMail that can be used for the B listener needed in the Enterprise Gateway configuration. (Note: you also had the option to add this private listener during the GUI’s System Setup Wizard CLI \texttt{systemsetup} command.)

A private listener type is chosen and named OutboundMail. It is specified to run on the PrivateNet IP interface, using the SMTP protocol over port 25. The default values for the Host Access Policy for this listener are then accepted.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\caption{\texttt{listenerconfig - Adding a listener}}
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
mail3.example.com\> \texttt{listenerconfig} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

Currently configured listeners:
Table 3-169  listenerconfig - Adding a listener (Continued)

1. InboundMail (on PublicNet, 192.168.2.1) SMTP TCP Port 25 Public

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new listener.
- EDIT - Modify a listener.
- DELETE - Remove a listener.
- SETUP - Change global settings.

[1]> new

Please select the type of listener you want to create.
1. Private
2. Public
3. Blackhole

[2]> 1

Please create a name for this listener (Ex: "OutboundMail"):

[1]> OutboundMail

Please choose an IP interface for this Listener.
1. Management (192.168.42.42/24: mail3.example.com)
2. PrivateNet (192.168.1.1/24: mail3.example.com)
3. PublicNet (192.168.2.1/24: mail3.example.com)

[1]> 2

Choose a protocol.
1. SMTP
2. QMQP

[1]> 1
Table 3-169   listenerconfig - Adding a listener (Continued)

Please enter the TCP port for this listener.

[25]> 25

Please specify the systems allowed to relay email through the IronPort C60.
Hostnames such as "example.com" are allowed.
Partial hostnames such as ".example.com" are allowed.
IP addresses, IP address ranges, and partial IP addresses are allowed.
Separate multiple entries with commas.
[]> .example.com

Do you want to enable rate limiting for this listener? (Rate limiting defines the maximum number of recipients per hour you are willing to receive from a remote domain.)  [N]> n

Default Policy Parameters

Maximum Message Size: 100M
Maximum Number Of Connections From A Single IP: 600
Maximum Number Of Messages Per Connection: 10,000
Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Message: 100,000
Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Hour: Disabled
Use SenderBase for Flow Control: No
Spam Detection Enabled: No
Virus Detection Enabled: Yes
Allow TLS Connections: No
Allow SMTP Authentication: No
Require TLS To Offer SMTP authentication: No
Would you like to change the default host access policy? [N]> n
Example - Customizing the Host Acess Table (HAT) for a listener via Export and Import

Many of the subcommands within the listenerconfig command allow you to import and export data in order to make large configuration changes without having to enter data piecemeal in the CLI.

These steps use the CLI to modify the Host Access Table (HAT) of a listener by exporting, modifying, and importing a file. You can also use the HAT CLI editor or the GUI to customize the HAT for a listener. For more information, see the “Configuring the Gateway to Receive Mail” and “Using Mail Flow Monitor” chapters in the user guide for your AsyncOS release.

To customize a HAT for a listener you have defined via export and import:

Step 1  Use the hostaccess -> export subcommands of listenerconfig to export the default HAT to a file.

In the following example, the HAT for the public listener InboundMail is printed, and then exported to a file named inbound.HAT.txt

Table 3-170  listenerconfig - Exporting the HAT

mail3.example.com> listenerconfig
Currently configured listeners:

1. InboundMail (on PublicNet, 192.168.2.1) SMTP TCP Port 25 Public
2. OutboundMail (on PrivateNet, 192.168.1.1) SMTP TCP Port 25 Private

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new listener.
- EDIT - Modify a listener.
- DELETE - Remove a listener.
- SETUP - Change global settings.

[]> edit

Enter the name or number of the listener you wish to edit.

[]> 1

Name: InboundMail
Type: Public
Interface: PublicNet (192.168.2.1/24) TCP Port 25
Protocol: SMTP
Default Domain:
Max Concurrency: 1000 (TCP Queue: 50)
Domain map: disabled
TLS: No
SMTP Authentication: Disabled
Bounce Profile: Default
Use SenderBase For Reputation Filters and IP Profiling: Yes
Footer: None
LDAP: off

Choose the operation you want to perform:
SMTP Services Configuration

Table 3-170 listenerconfig - Exporting the HAT

- NAME - Change the name of the listener.
- INTERFACE - Change the interface.
- LIMITS - Change the injection limits.
- SETUP - Configure general options.
- HOSTACCESS - Modify the Host Access Table.
- RCPTACCESS - Modify the Recipient Access Table.
- BOUNCECONFIG - Choose the bounce profile to use for messages injected on this listener.
- MASQUERADE - Configure the Domain Masquerading Table.
- DOMAINMAP - Configure domain mappings.

[>] hostaccess

Default Policy Parameters

=============

Maximum Message Size: 10M
Maximum Number Of Concurrent Connections From A Single IP: 10
Maximum Number Of Messages Per Connection: 10
Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Message: 50
Directory Harvest Attack Prevention: Enabled
Maximum Number Of Invalid Recipients Per Hour: 25
Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Hour: Disabled
Use SenderBase for Flow Control: Yes
Spam Detection Enabled: Yes
Virus Detection Enabled: Yes
Allow TLS Connections: No
Allow SMTP Authentication: No
Require TLS To Offer SMTP authentication: No
DKIM/DomainKeys Signing Enabled: No
DKIM Verification Enabled: No
SPF/SIDF Verification Enabled: No
DMARC Verification Enabled: No
Envelope Sender DNS Verification Enabled: No
Domain Exception Table Enabled: No
Accept untagged bounces: No

There are currently 4 policies defined.

There are currently 5 sender groups.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
Table 3-170  listenerconfig - Exporting the HAT

- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- MOVE - Move an entry.
- DEFAULT - Set the defaults.
- PRINT - Display the table.
- IMPORT - Import a table from a file.
- EXPORT - Export the table to a file.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.

[]> print

$BLOCKED

REJECT {}

$TRUSTED

ACCEPT {
    tls = "off"
    dhap_limit = 0
    max_rcpts_per_hour = -1
    virus_check = "on"
    max_msgs_per_session = 5000
    spam_check = "off"
    use_sb = "off"
    max_message_size = 104857600
    max_rcpts_per_msg = 5000
    max_concurrency = 600
}

$ACCEPTED

ACCEPT {}
SMTP Services Configuration

$THROTTLED

ACCEPT {
  tls = "off"
  dhap_limit = 0
  max_rcpts_per_hour = 1
  virus_check = "on"
  max_msgs_per_session = 10
  spam_check = "on"
  use_sb = "on"
  max_message_size = 1048576
  max_rcpts_per_msg = 25
  max_concurrency = 10
}

WHITELIST:

$TRUSTED (My trusted senders have no anti-spam or rate limiting)

BLACKLIST:

$BLOCKED (Spammers are rejected)

SUSPECTLIST:

$THROTTLED (Suspicious senders are throttled)

UNKNOWNLIST:

$ACCEPTED (Reviewed but undecided, continue normal acceptance)

ALL

$ACCEPTED (Everyone else)
### Table 3-170  \textit{listenerconfig - Exporting the HAT}

Default Policy Parameters

\begin{itemize}
  \item Allow TLS Connections: No
  \item Allow SMTP Authentication: No
  \item Require TLS To Offer SMTP authentication: No
  \item Maximum Concurrency Per IP: 1,000
  \item Maximum Message Size: 100M
  \item Maximum Messages Per Connection: 1,000
  \item Maximum Recipients Per Message: 1,000
  \item Maximum Recipients Per Hour: Disabled
  \item Use SenderBase For Flow Control: Yes
  \item Spam Detection Enabled: Yes
  \item Virus Detection Enabled: Yes
\end{itemize}

There are currently 4 policies defined.

There are currently 5 sender groups.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

\begin{itemize}
  \item NEW - Create a new entry.
  \item EDIT - Modify an entry.
  \item DELETE - Remove an entry.
  \item MOVE - Move an entry.
  \item DEFAULT - Set the defaults.
  \item PRINT - Display the table.
  \item IMPORT - Import a table from a file.
  \item EXPORT - Export the table to a file.
  \item CLEAR - Remove all entries.
\end{itemize}
Step 2  Outside of the Command Line Interface (CLI), get the file `inbound.HAT.txt`.

Step 3  With a text editor, create new HAT entries in the file.

In this example, the following entries are added to the HAT above the `ALL` entry:

- The first two entries reject all connections from the remote hosts in the domain `spamdomain.com` and any subdomain of `spamdomain.com`.
- The third line refuses connections from any host with an IP address of `251.192.1.x`.
- The fourth line allows the remote host with the IP address of `169.254.10.10` to use the Email Security appliance as an SMTP relay for all of its outbound email to the Internet.

Note  The order that rules appear in the HAT is important. The HAT is read from top to bottom for each host that attempts to connect to the listener. If a rule matches a connecting host, the action is taken for that connection immediately. You should place all custom entries in the HAT above an ALL host definition. You can also use the HAT CLI editor or the GUI to customize the HAT for a listener. For more information, see the “Configuring the Gateway to Receive Mail” and “Using Mail Flow Monitor” chapters in the user guide for your AsyncOS release.

Step 4  Save the file and place it in the configuration directory for the interface so that it can be imported. (See Appendix B, “Accessing the Appliance,” for more information.)

Step 5  Use the `hostaccess -> import` subcommand of `listenerconfig` to import the edited Host Access Table file.

In the following example, the edited file named `inbound.HAT.txt` is imported into the HAT for the InboundMail listener. The new entries are printed using the `print` subcommand.
Currently configured listeners:

1. InboundMail (on PublicNet, 192.168.2.1) SMTP TCP Port 25 Public
2. OutboundMail (on PrivateNet, 192.168.1.1) SMTP TCP Port 25 Private

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new listener.
- EDIT - Modify a listener.
- DELETE - Remove a listener.
- SETUP - Change global settings.

[]> edit

Enter the name or number of the listener you wish to edit.

[]> 1

Name: InboundMail
Type: Public
Interface: PublicNet (192.168.2.1/24) TCP Port 25
Protocol: SMTP
Default Domain:
Max Concurrency: 1000 (TCP Queue: 50)
Domain Map: Disabled
TLS: No
SMTP Authentication: Disabled
Bounce Profile: Default
Use SenderBase For Reputation Filters and IP Profiling: Yes
Footer: None
LDAP: Off
Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NAME - Change the name of the listener.
- INTERFACE - Change the interface.
- LIMITS - Change the injection limits.
- SETUP - Configure general options.
- HOSTACCESS - Modify the Host Access Table.
- RCPPTACCESS - Modify the Recipient Access Table.
- BOUNCECONFIG - Choose the bounce profile to use for messages injected on this listener.
- MASQUERADE - Configure the Domain Masquerading Table.
- DOMAINMAP - Configure domain mappings.

[]> hostaccess

Default Policy Parameters

====================================
Allow TLS Connections: No
Allow SMTP Authentication: No
Require TLS To Offer SMTP authentication: No
Maximum Concurrency Per IP: 1,000
Maximum Message Size: 100M
Maximum Messages Per Connection: 1,000
Maximum Recipients Per Message: 1,000
Maximum Recipients Per Hour: Disabled
Use SenderBase For Flow Control: Yes
Spam Detection Enabled: Yes
Virus Detection Enabled: Yes
Table 3-171  listnerconfig - Importing the HAT (Continued)

There are currently 4 policies defined.

There are currently 5 sender groups.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- MOVE - Move an entry.
- DEFAULT - Set the defaults.
- PRINT - Display the table.
- IMPORT - Import a table from a file.
- EXPORT - Export the table to a file.
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.

[]> import

Enter the name of the file to import:

[]> inbound.HAT.txt

9 entries imported successfully.

Default Policy Parameters
==========================

Allow TLS Connections: No
Allow SMTP Authentication: No
Require TLS To Offer SMTP authentication: No
Maximum Concurrency Per IP: 1,000
Maximum Message Size: 100M
Maximum Messages Per Connection: 1,000
Table 3-171  

**listenerconfig - Importing the HAT (Continued)**

Maximum Recipients Per Message: 1,000  
Maximum Recipients Per Hour: Disabled  
Use SenderBase For Flow Control: Yes  
Spam Detection Enabled: Yes  
Virus Detection Enabled: Yes

There are currently 4 policies defined.  
There are currently 5 sender groups.

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new entry.  
- EDIT - Modify an entry.  
- DELETE - Remove an entry.  
- MOVE - Move an entry.  
- DEFAULT - Set the defaults.  
- PRINT - Display the table.  
- IMPORT - Import a table from a file.  
- EXPORT - Export the table to a file.  
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.

[]> print

$ACCEPTED

    ACCEPT

$THROTTLED

    ACCEPT {
        spam_check = "on"
        max_msgs_per_session = 10
        max_concurrency = 10
    }
Table 3-171 listenerconfig - Importing the HAT (Continued)

max_rcpts_per_msg = 25
max_rcpts_per_hour = 1
dhap_limit = 0
virus_check = "on"
max_message_size = 1048576
use_sb = "on"
 tls = "off"
}

$TRUSTED

ACCEPT {

spam_check = "off"
maxmsgs_per_session = 5000
max_concurrency = 600
max_rcpts_per_msg = 5000
max_rcpts_per_hour = -1
dhap_limit = 0
virus_check = "on"
max_message_size = 104857600
use_sb = "off"
 tls = "off"
}

$BLOCKED

REJECT

WHITELIST:

$TRUSTED (My trusted senders have no anti-spam scanning or rate limiting)

BLACKLIST:
Table 3-171  listenerconfig - Importing the HAT (Continued)

$BLOCKED (Spammers are rejected)

SUSPECTLIST:

$THROTTLED (Suspicious senders are throttled)

UNKNOWNLIST:

$ACCEPTED (Reviewed but undecided, continue normal acceptance)

spamdomain.com

REJECT (reject the domain "spamdomain.com")

.spamdomain.com

REJECT (reject all subdomains of ".spamdomain.com")

251.192.1.

TCPREFUSE (TCPREFUSE the IP addresses in "251.192.1")

169.254.10.10

RELAY (RELAY the address 169.254.10.10)

ALL

$ACCEPTED (Everyone else)

Default Policy Parameters

==========================

Allow TLS Connections: No
Remember to issue the `commit` command after you import so that the configuration change takes effect.

### Table 3-171  listenerconfig - Importing the HAT (Continued)

Allow SMTP Authentication: No  
Require TLS To Offer SMTP authentication: No  
Maximum Concurrency Per IP: 1,000  
Maximum Message Size: 100M  
Maximum Messages Per Connection: 1,000  
Maximum Recipients Per Message: 1,000  
Maximum Recipients Per Hour: Disabled  
Use SenderBase For Flow Control: Yes  
Spam Detection Enabled: Yes  
Virus Detection Enabled: Yes  

There are currently 4 policies defined.  
There are currently 5 sender groups.

Choose the operation you want to perform:  
- NEW - Create a new entry.  
- EDIT - Modify an entry.  
- DELETE - Remove an entry.  
- MOVE - Move an entry.  
- DEFAULT - Set the defaults.  
- PRINT - Display the table.  
- IMPORT - Import a table from a file.  
- EXPORT - Export the table to a file.  
- CLEAR - Remove all entries.  

[]>
### Example - Advanced HAT Parameters

Table 3-172 defines the syntax of advanced HAT parameters. Note that for the values below which are numbers, you can add a trailing \textit{k} to denote kilobytes or a trailing \textit{M} to denote megabytes. Values with no letters are considered bytes. Parameters marked with an asterisk support the variable syntax shown in Table 3-172.

**Table 3-172 Advanced HAT Parameter Syntax**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Values</th>
<th>Example Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum messages per connection</td>
<td>maxmsgs_per_session</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum recipients per message</td>
<td>maxrcpts_per_msg</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>10000 1k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum message size</td>
<td>max_message_size</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>1048576 20M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum concurrent connections allowed to this listener</td>
<td>max_concurrency</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTP Banner Code</td>
<td>smtp_banner_code</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTP Banner Text (*)</td>
<td>smtp_banner_text</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Accepted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTP Reject Banner Code</td>
<td>smtp_banner_code</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTP Reject Banner Text (*)</td>
<td>smtp_banner_text</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Override SMTP Banner Hostname</td>
<td>use_override_hostname</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>override_hostname</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>newhostname</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use TLS</td>
<td>tls</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use anti-spam scanning</td>
<td>spam_check</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Sophos virus scanning</td>
<td>virus_check</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Recipients per Hour</td>
<td>maxrcpts_per_hour</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>5k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Recipients per Hour Error Code</td>
<td>maxrcpts_per_hour_code</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Recipients per Hour Text (*)</td>
<td>maxrcpts_per_hour_text</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Too many recipients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use SenderBase</td>
<td>use_sb</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example - Configuring SPF and SIDF

When configuring the default settings for a listener’s Host Access Table, you can choose the listener’s SPF/SIDF conformance level and the SMTP actions (ACCEPT or REJECT) that the appliance performs, based on the SPF/SIDF verification results. You can also define the SMTP response that the appliance sends when it rejects a message.

Depending on the conformance level, the appliance performs a check against the HELO identity, MAIL FROM identity, or PRA identity. You can specify whether the appliance proceeds with the session (ACCEPT) or terminates the session (REJECT) for each of the following SPF/SIDF verification results for each identity check:

- **None.** No verification can be performed due to the lack of information.
- **Neutral.** The domain owner does not assert whether the client is authorized to use the given identity.
- **SoftFail.** The domain owner believes the host is not authorized to use the given identity but is not willing to make a definitive statement.
- **Fail.** The client is not authorized to send mail with the given identity.
- **TempError.** A transient error occurred during verification.
- **PermError.** A permanent error occurred during verification.

The appliance accepts the message for a Pass result unless you configure the SIDF Compatible conformance level to downgrade a Pass result of the PRA identity to None if there are Resent-Sender: or Resent-From: headers present in the message. The appliance then takes the SMTP action specified for when the PRA check returns None.

If you choose not to define the SMTP actions for an identity check, the appliance automatically accepts all verification results, including Fail.

The appliance terminates the session if the identity verification result matches a REJECT action for any of the enabled identity checks. For example, an administrator configures a listener to accept messages based on all HELO identity check results, including Fail, but also configures it to reject messages for a Fail result from the MAIL FROM identity check. If a message fails the HELO identity check, the session proceeds because the appliance accepts that result. If the message then fails the MAIL FROM identity check, the listener terminates the session and then returns the SMTP response for the REJECT action.

The SMTP response is a code number and message that the appliance returns when it rejects a message based on the SPF/SIDF verification result. The TempError result returns a different SMTP response from the other verification results. For TempError, the default response code is 451 and the default message text is #4.4.3 Temporary error occurred during SPF verification. For all other verification results, the default response code is 550 and the default message text is #5.7.1 SPF unauthorized mail is prohibited. You can specify your own response code and message text for TempError and the other verification results.

---

**Table 3-172 Advanced HAT Parameter Syntax**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Values</th>
<th>Example Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Define SenderBase Reputation Score</td>
<td>sbrs[value1:val2]</td>
<td>-10.0–10.0</td>
<td>sbrs[-10:-7.5]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory Harvest Attack Prevention: Maximum Invalid Recipients Per Hour</td>
<td>dhap_limit</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Cisco AsyncOS 8.5.6 CLI Reference Guide
Optionally, you can configure the appliance to return a third-party response from the SPF publisher domain if the REJECT action is taken for Neutral, SoftFail, or Fail verification result. By default, the appliance returns the following response:

```
550-5.7.1 SPF unauthorized mail is prohibited.
550-The domain example.com explains:
550 <Response text from SPF domain publisher>
```

To enable these SPF/SIDF settings, use the `listenerconfig -> edit` subcommand and select a listener. Then use the `hostaccess -> default` subcommand to edit the Host Access Table’s default settings. Answer yes to the following prompts to configure the SPF controls:

```
Would you like to change SPF/SIDF settings? [N]> yes
Would you like to perform SPF/SIDF Verification? [Y]> yes
```

The following SPF control settings are available for the Host Access Table:

**Table 3-173 SPF Control Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conformance Level</th>
<th>Available SPF Control Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SPF Only</td>
<td>• whether to perform HELO identity check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SMTP actions taken based on the results of the following identity checks:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HELO identity (if enabled)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• MAIL FROM Identity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SMTP response code and text returned for the REJECT action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• verification time out (in seconds)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following example shows a user configuring the SPF/SIDF verification using the SPF Only conformance level. The appliance performs the HELO identity check and accepts the None and Neutral verification results and rejects the others. The CLI prompts for the SMTP actions are the same for all identity types. The user does not define the SMTP actions for the MAIL FROM identity. The appliance automatically accepts all verification results for the identity. The appliance uses the default reject code and text for all REJECT results.

### Table 3-173 SPF Control Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conformance Level</th>
<th>Available SPF Control Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIDF Compatible</td>
<td>• whether to perform a HELO identity check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• whether the verification downgrades a Pass result of the PRA identity to None if the Resent-Sender: or Resent-From: headers are present in the message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SMTP actions taken based on the results of the following identity checks:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HELO identity (if enabled)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• MAIL FROM Identity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• PRA Identity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SMTP response code and text returned for the REJECT action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• verification timeout (in seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIDF Strict</td>
<td>• SMTP actions taken based on the results of the following identity checks:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• MAIL FROM Identity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• PRA Identity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SMTP response code and text returned in case of SPF REJECT action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• verification timeout (in seconds)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following example shows a user configuring the SPF/SIDF verification using the SPF Only conformance level. The appliance performs the HELO identity check and accepts the None and Neutral verification results and rejects the others. The CLI prompts for the SMTP actions are the same for all identity types. The user does not define the SMTP actions for the MAIL FROM identity. The appliance automatically accepts all verification results for the identity. The appliance uses the default reject code and text for all REJECT results.

### Table 3-174 SPF/SIDF Settings

Would you like to change SPF/SIDF settings? [N]> **yes**

Would you like to perform SPF/SIDF Verification? [N]> **yes**

What Conformance Level would you like to use?

1. SPF only
2. SIDF compatible
3. SIDF strict
Table 3-174  SPF/SIDF Settings

Would you like to have the HELO check performed? [Y]> y

Would you like to change SMTP actions taken as result of the SPF verification? [N]> y

Would you like to change SMTP actions taken for the HELO identity? [N]> y

What SMTP action should be taken if HELO check returns None?

1. Accept
2. Reject

[1]> 1

What SMTP action should be taken if HELO check returns Neutral?

1. Accept
2. Reject

[1]> 1

What SMTP action should be taken if HELO check returns SoftFail?

1. Accept
2. Reject

[1]> 2

What SMTP action should be taken if HELO check returns Fail?

1. Accept
2. Reject

[1]> 2
Table 3-174 SPF/SIDF Settings

What SMTP action should be taken if HELO check returns TempError?
1. Accept
2. Reject

[1]> 2

What SMTP action should be taken if HELO check returns PermError?
1. Accept
2. Reject

[1]> 2

Would you like to change SMTP actions taken for the MAIL FROM identity? [N]> n

Would you like to change SMTP response settings for the REJECT action? [N]> n

Verification timeout (seconds)
[40]>

The following shows how the SPF/SIDF settings are displayed for the listener’s Default Policy Parameters.

Table 3-175 SPF/SIDF in Default Policy Parameters

- SPF/SIDF Verification Enabled: Yes
- Conformance Level: SPF only
- Do HELO test: Yes
- SMTP actions:
  - For HELO Identity:
    - None, Neutral: Accept
    - SoftFail, Fail, TempError, PermError: Reject
  - For MAIL FROM Identity: Accept
Example - Enable DMARC Verification

The following example shows how to enable DMARC verification.

```plaintext
mail.example.com> listenerconfig

Currently configured listeners:
1. Listener 1 (on Management, 172.29.181.70) SMTP TCP Port 25 Public

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new listener.
- EDIT - Modify a listener.
- DELETE - Remove a listener.
- SETUP - Change global settings.
[1]> edit

Enter the name or number of the listener you wish to edit.
[1]> 1

Name: Listener 1
Type: Public
Interface: Management (172.29.181.70/24) TCP Port 25
Protocol: SMTP
Default Domain: <none configured>
Max Concurrent Connections: 300 (TCP Queue: 50)
Domain Map: Disabled
TLS: No
SMTP Authentication: Disabled
Bounce Profile: Default
Use SenderBase For Reputation Filters and IP Profiling: Yes
Footer: None
Heading: None
SMTP Call-Ahead: Disabled
LDAP: Off

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NAME - Change the name of the listener.
- INTERFACE - Change the interface.
- CERTIFICATE - Choose the certificate.
- LIMITS - Change the injection limits.
- SETUP - Configure general options.
```

---

**Table 3-175 SPF/SIDF in Default Policy Parameters**

SMTP Response Settings:
- Reject code: 550
- Reject text: #5.7.1 SPF unauthorized mail is prohibited.
- Get reject response text from publisher: Yes
- Defer code: 451
- Defer text: #4.4.3 Temporary error occurred during SPF verification.
- Verification timeout: 40
- HOSTACCESS - Modify the Host Access Table.
- RCPTACCESS - Modify the Recipient Access Table.
- BOUNCECONFIG - Choose the bounce profile to use for messages injected on this listener.
- MASQUERADE - Configure the Domain Masquerading Table.
- DOMAINMAP - Configure domain mappings.

[]> hostaccess

Default Policy Parameters
==========================
Maximum Message Size: 20M
Maximum Number Of Concurrent Connections From A Single IP: 10
Maximum Number Of Messages Per Connection: 10
Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Message: 50
Directory Harvest Attack Prevention: Enabled
Maximum Number Of Invalid Recipients Per Hour: 25
Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Hour: Disabled
Maximum Number of Recipients per Envelope Sender: Disabled
Use SenderBase for Flow Control: Yes
Spam Detection Enabled: Yes
Virus Detection Enabled: Yes
Allow TLS Connections: No
Allow SMTP Authentication: No
Require TLS To Offer SMTP authentication: No
DKIM/DomainKeys Signing Enabled: No
DKIM Verification Enabled: No
SPF/STDF Verification Enabled: No
DMARC Verification Enabled: No
Envelope Sender DNS Verification Enabled: No
Domain Exception Table Enabled: No
Accept untagged bounces: No

There are currently 4 policies defined.
There are currently 5 sender groups.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- MOVE - Move an entry.
- DEFAULT - Set the defaults.
- PRINT - Display the table.
- IMPORT - Import a table from a file.
- EXPORT - Export the table to a file.
- RESET - Remove senders and set policies to system default.

[]> default

Enter the default maximum message size. Add a trailing k for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or no letter for bytes.
[20M]>

Enter the maximum number of concurrent connections allowed from a single IP address.
[10]>

Enter the maximum number of messages per connection.
[10]>

Enter the maximum number of recipients per message.
[50]>

Do you want to override the hostname in the SMTP banner? [N]>

Would you like to specify a custom SMTP acceptance response? [N]>

Would you like to specify a custom SMTP rejection response? [N]>

...
Do you want to enable rate limiting per host?  [N]>

Do you want to enable rate limiting per envelope sender?  [N]>

Do you want to enable Directory Harvest Attack Prevention per host?  [Y]>

Enter the maximum number of invalid recipients per hour from a remote host.  
[25]>

Select an action to apply when a recipient is rejected due to DHAP:
1. Drop
2. Code
[1]>

Would you like to specify a custom SMTP DHAP response?  [Y]>

Enter the SMTP code to use in the response. 550 is the standard code.  
[550]>

Enter your custom SMTP response. Press Enter on a blank line to finish.

Would you like to use SenderBase for flow control by default?  [Y]>

Would you like to enable anti-spam scanning?  [Y]>

Would you like to enable anti-virus scanning?  [Y]>

Do you want to allow encrypted TLS connections?
1. No
2. Preferred
3. Required
4. Preferred - Verify
5. Required - Verify
[1]>

Would you like to enable DKIM/DomainKeys signing?  [N]>

Would you like to enable DKIM verification?  [N]>

Would you like to change SPF/SIDF settings?  [N]>

Would you like to enable DMARC verification?  [N]>

Select the DMARC verification profile to use:
1. DEFAULT
[1]>

Would you like to send aggregate reports?  [N]>

Note: DMARC reports should be DMARC compliant.
Secure delivery is recommended for delivery of DMARC reports.
Please enable TLS support using the `destconfig` command.

Would you like to enable envelope sender verification?  [N]>

Would you like to specify a custom SMTP response for malformed envelope senders?  [Y]>

Enter the SMTP code to use in the response. 553 is the standard code.  
[553]>

Enter your custom SMTP response. Press Enter on a blank line to finish.
Would you like to specify a custom SMTP response for envelope sender domains which do not resolve? [Y]>

Enter the SMTP code to use in the response. 451 is the standard code.
{451}>

Enter your custom SMTP response. Press Enter on a blank line to finish.

Would you like to specify a custom SMTP response for envelope sender domains which do not exist? [Y]>

Enter the SMTP code to use in the response. 553 is the standard code.
{553}>

Enter your custom SMTP response. Press Enter on a blank line to finish.

Would you like to enable use of the domain exception table? [N]>

Do you wish to accept untagged bounces? [N]>

Default Policy Parameters
==========================
Maximum Message Size: 20M
Maximum Number Of Concurrent Connections From A Single IP: 10
Maximum Number Of Messages Per Connection: 10
Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Message: 50
Directory Harvest Attack Prevention: Enabled
Maximum Number Of Invalid Recipients Per Hour: 25
Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Hour: Disabled
Maximum Number of Recipients per Envelope Sender: Disabled
Use SenderBase for Flow Control: Yes
Spam Detection Enabled: Yes
Virus Detection Enabled: Yes
Allow TLS Connections: No
Allow SMTP Authentication: No
Require TLS To Offer SMTP authentication: No
DKIM/DomainKeys Signing Enabled: No
DKIM Verification Enabled: No
SPF/SIDF Verification Enabled: No
DMARC Verification Enabled: Yes
DMARC Verification Profile: DEFAULT
Aggregate reports: Yes
Envelope Sender DNS Verification Enabled: Yes
Domain Exception Table Enabled: No
Accept untagged bounces: No

There are currently 4 policies defined.
There are currently 5 sender groups.

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new entry.
- EDIT - Modify an entry.
- DELETE - Remove an entry.
- MOVE - Move an entry.
- DEFAULT - Set the defaults.
- PRINT - Display the table.
- IMPORT - Import a table from a file.
- EXPORT - Export the table to a file.
- RESET - Remove senders and set policies to system default.
[]>

Name: Listener 1
Type: Public
Interface: Management (172.29.181.70/24) TCP Port 25
SMTP Services Configuration

Protocol: SMTP
Default Domain: <none configured>
Max Concurrent Connections: 300 (TCP Queue: 50)
Domain Map: Disabled
TLS: No
SMTP Authentication: Disabled
Bounce Profile: Default
Use SenderBase For Reputation Filters and IP Profiling: Yes
Footer: None
Heading: None
SMTP Call-Ahead: Disabled
LDAP: Off

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NAME - Change the name of the listener.
- INTERFACE - Change the interface.
- CERTIFICATE - Choose the certificate.
- LIMITS - Change the injection limits.
- SETUP - Configure general options.
- HOSTACCESS - Modify the Host Access Table.
- RCPTACCESS - Modify the Recipient Access Table.
- BOUNCECONFIG - Choose the bounce profile to use for messages injected on this listener.
- MASQUERADE - Configure the Domain Masquerading Table.
- DOMAINMAP - Configure domain mappings.

Currently configured listeners:
1. Listener 1 (on Management, 172.29.181.70) SMTP TCP Port 25 Public

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new listener.
- EDIT - Modify a listener.
- DELETE - Remove a listener.
- SETUP - Change global settings.

localeconfig

Description

Configure multi-lingual settings

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-176 localeconfig

mail3.example.com> localeconfig

Behavior when modifying headers: Use encoding of message body

Behavior for untagged non-ASCII headers: Impose encoding of message body

Behavior for mismatched encodings bodies and footers: Use encoding of message footer

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Configure multi-lingual settings.

[>] setup

If a header is modified, encode the new header in the same encoding as the message body? (Some MUAs incorrectly handle headers encoded in a different encoding than the body. However, encoding a modified header in the same encoding as the message body may cause certain characters in the modified header to be lost.) [Y]>

If a non-ASCII header is not properly tagged with a character set, impose the encoding of the body on the header during processing and final representation of the message? (Many MUAs create non-RFC-compliant headers that are then handled in an undefined way. Imposing the encoding of the body on the header may encode the header more precisely.) [Y]>

When there is an encoding mismatch between the message body and a footer, the system initially attempts to encode the entire message in the same encoding as the message body. If the system cannot combine the message body and the footer in the same encoding, do you want the system to failover and attempt to encode the entire message using the encoding of the message footer? (When this feature is enabled, the system will attempt to display the footer “in-line” rather than defaulting to adding it as an attachment.) [N]>

Behavior when modifying headers: Use encoding of message body

Behavior for untagged non-ASCII headers: Impose encoding of message body

Behavior for mismatched encodings bodies and footers: Use encoding of message body

Choose the operation you want to perform:
### smtpauthconfig

**Description**

Configure SMTP Auth outgoing and forwarding profiles.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

In the following example, the `smtpauthconfig` command is used to create a new, forwarding-based profile for the server “smtp2.example.com:”

```
Table 3-177  smtpauthconfig

mail3.example.com> smtpauthconfig

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new SMTP Auth profile

[>] new

Choose the type of profile you wish to create:

- FORWARD - Create an SMTP Auth forwarding server group profile
- OUTGOING - Create an outgoing SMTP Auth profile

[>] forward

Enter a name for this profile:
```
Please begin entering forwarding servers for this group profile.

Enter a hostname or an IP address for the forwarding server:

```bash
[]> smtp2.example.com
```

Enter a port:

```bash
[25]>
```

Choose the interface to use for forwarding requests:

1. Auto
2. Data 1 (192.168.1.1/24: mail3.example.com)
3. Data 2 (192.168.2.1/24: mail3.example.com)
4. Management (192.168.42.42/24: mail3.example.com)

```bash
[1]>
```

Require TLS? (issue STARTTLS) [Y]>

```bash
y
```

Enter the maximum number of simultaneous connections allowed:

```bash
[10]>
```

Use SASL PLAIN mechanism when contacting forwarding server? [Y]>

Use SASL LOGIN mechanism when contacting forwarding server? [Y]>

Would you like to enter another forwarding server to this group? [N]>

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new SMTP Auth profile
Note An authenticated user is granted a RELAY HAT policy.

Note You may specify more than one forwarding server in a profile. SASL mechanisms CRAM-MD5 and DIGEST-MD5 are not supported between the Email Security appliance and a forwarding server.

System Setup

systemsetup

Description

First time system setup as well as re-installation of the system.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-178  systemsetup

mail3.example.com> systemsetup

WARNING: The system setup wizard will completely delete any existing
'listeners' and all associated settings including the 'Host Access Table'
-
mail operations may be interrupted.

Are you sure you wish to continue? [Y]> y

Before you begin, please reset the administrator password to a new value.
Old password:
New password:
Retype new password:

*****
You will now configure the network settings for the IronPort C100.
Please create a fully qualified hostname for the IronPort C100 appliance
(Ex: "ironport-C100.example.com"): 

[]> ironport-C100.example.com

*****

You will now assign an IP address for the "Data 1" interface.
Please create a nickname for the "Data 1" interface (Ex: "Data 1"):  
Enter the static IP address for "Data 1" on the "Data 1" interface? (Ex: "192.168.1.1"): 

[]> **192.168.1.1**

What is the netmask for this IP address? (Ex: "255.255.255.0" or "0xffffff00"): 

[255.255.255.0]>

You have successfully configured IP Interface "Data 1".

*****

Would you like to assign a second IP address for the "Data 1" interface? [Y]> **n**

What is the IP address of the default router (gateway) on your network?: 

[192.168.1.1]> **192.168.2.1**

*****

Do you want to enable the web interface on the Data 1 interface? [Y]> **y**

Do you want to use secure HTTPS? [Y]> **y**

Note: The system will use a demo certificate for HTTPS.

Use the "certconfig" command to upload your own certificate.
Do you want the IronPort C100 to use the Internet's root DNS servers or would you like it to use your own DNS servers?

1. Use Internet root DNS servers
2. Use my own DNS servers

[1]> 2

Please enter the IP address of your DNS server.

[]> 192.168.0.3

Do you want to enter another DNS server? [N]>

You have successfully configured the DNS settings.

You are now going to configure how the IronPort C100 accepts mail by creating a "Listener".

Please create a name for this listener (Ex: "MailInterface"): 

[]> InboundMail

Please choose an IP interface for this Listener.

1. Data 1 (192.168.1.1/24: ironport-C100.example.com)

[1]> 1
System Setup

Enter the domain names or specific email addresses you want to accept mail for.

Hostnames such as "example.com" are allowed.

Partial hostnames such as ".example.com" are allowed.

Usernames such as "postmaster@" are allowed.

Full email addresses such as "joe@example.com" or "joe@[1.2.3.4]" are allowed.

Separate multiple addresses with commas.

[] > example.com, .example.com

Would you like to configure SMTP routes for example.com, .example.com? [Y]> n

Please specify the systems allowed to relay email through the IronPort C100.

Hostnames such as "example.com" are allowed.

Partial hostnames such as ".example.com" are allowed.

IP addresses, IP address ranges, and partial IP addresses are allowed.

Separate multiple entries with commas.

[] > example.com, .example.com

Do you want to enable filtering based on SenderBase Reputation Service (SBRS)?

Scores for this listener? (Your selection will be used to filter all incoming mail based on its SBRS Score.) [Y]> y

Do you want to enable rate limiting for this listener? (Rate limiting defines the maximum number of recipients per hour you are willing to receive from a

Table 3-178  systemsetup

Enter the domain names or specific email addresses you want to accept mail for.

Hostnames such as "example.com" are allowed.

Partial hostnames such as ".example.com" are allowed.

Usernames such as "postmaster@" are allowed.

Full email addresses such as "joe@example.com" or "joe@[1.2.3.4]" are allowed.

Separate multiple addresses with commas.

[] > example.com, .example.com

Would you like to configure SMTP routes for example.com, .example.com? [Y]> n

Please specify the systems allowed to relay email through the IronPort C100.

Hostnames such as "example.com" are allowed.

Partial hostnames such as ".example.com" are allowed.

IP addresses, IP address ranges, and partial IP addresses are allowed.

Separate multiple entries with commas.

[] > example.com, .example.com

Do you want to enable filtering based on SenderBase Reputation Service (SBRS)?

Scores for this listener? (Your selection will be used to filter all incoming mail based on its SBRS Score.) [Y]> y

Do you want to enable rate limiting for this listener? (Rate limiting defines the maximum number of recipients per hour you are willing to receive from a
### Table 3-178  systemsetup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>remote domain.</td>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter the maximum number of recipients per hour to accept from a remote domain.</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Policy Parameters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Message Size:</td>
<td>10M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Number Of Concurrent Connections From A Single IP:</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Number Of Messages Per Connection:</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Message:</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory Harvest Attack Prevention:</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Number Of Invalid Recipients Per Hour:</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Number Of Recipients Per Hour:</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Recipients Per Hour SMTP Response:</td>
<td>452 Too many recipients received this hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use SenderBase for Flow Control:</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spam Detection Enabled:</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virus Detection Enabled:</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow TLS Connections:</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow SMTP Authentication:</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Require TLS To Offer SMTP authentication:</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DKIM/DomainKeys Signing Enabled:</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DKIM Verification Enabled:</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPF/SIDF Verification Enabled:</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMARC Verification Enabled:</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Envelope Sender DNS Verification Enabled:</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3-178  systemsetup

Domain Exception Table Enabled: No
Accept untagged bounces: No
Would you like to change the default host access policy? [N]> n

Listener InboundMail created.
Defaults have been set for a Public listener.
Use the listenerconfig->EDIT command to customize the listener.

*****

Do you want to use Anti-Spam scanning in the default Incoming Mail policy? [Y]> y

Would you like to enable IronPort Spam Quarantine? [Y]> y

IronPort Anti-Spam configured globally for the IronPort C100 appliance.
Use the policyconfig command (CLI) or Mail Policies (GUI) to customize the IronPort settings for each listener.

IronPort selected for DEFAULT policy

*****

Do you want to use Anti-Virus scanning in the default Incoming and Outgoing Mail policies? [Y]> y

1. McAfee Anti-Virus
**Table 3-178 systemsetup**

2. Sophos Anti-Virus

Enter the number of the Anti-Virus engine you would like to use on the default Incoming and Outgoing Mail policies.

[]> 2

Sophos selected for DEFAULT policy

*****

Do you want to enable Outbreak Filters? [Y]> y

Outbreak Filters enabled.

Outbreak Filter alerts are sent when outbreak rules cross the threshold (go above or back down below), meaning that new messages of certain types could be quarantined or will no longer be quarantined, respectively.

Allow the sharing of limited data with SenderBase? [Y]> y

You have successfully configured Outbreak Filters and SenderBase.

*****

You will now configure system alerts.

Please enter the email address(es) to send alerts.

(Ex: "administrator@example.com")

Separate multiple addresses with commas.

[]> administrator@example.com
Would you like to enable IronPort AutoSupport, which automatically emails system alerts and weekly status reports directly to IronPort Customer Support?
You will receive a complete copy of each message sent to IronPort.
(Recommended) [Y]> y

*****

You will now configure scheduled reporting.
Please enter the email address(es) to deliver scheduled reports to.
(Leave blank to only archive reports on-box.)
Separate multiple addresses with commas.
[]> administrator@example.com

*****

You will now configure system time settings.
Please choose your continent:
1. Africa
2. America
...
11. GMT Offset

Please choose your country:
Table 3-178  systemsetup

1. Anguilla
   ...
47. United States
48. Uruguay
49. Venezuela
50. Virgin Islands (British)
51. Virgin Islands (U.S.)

47

Please choose your timezone:
1. Alaska Time (Anchorage)
   ...
26. Pacific Time (Los_Angeles)

26

Do you wish to use NTP to set system time? [Y]> y

Please enter the fully qualified hostname or IP address of your NTP server, or
press Enter to use time.ironport.com:

time.ironport.com>

*****

Would you like to commit these changes at this time? [Y]> y
URL Filtering

This section contains the following CLI commands:

- urllistconfig
- webcacheflush
- websecurityadvancedconfig
- websecurityconfig
- websecuritydiagnostics

urllistconfig

Configure or import whitelists of URLs that will not be evaluated by URL filtering features. These lists are not used by the Outbreak Filters feature.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Example

> urllistconfig
No URL lists configured.
Choose the operation you want to perform:
NEW - Create a new URL list-
[*]> new
Do you want to import a URL list?
[N]> sample
Enter a name for the URL list
[*]> sample
Enter the URL domains that need to be skipped from scanning for URL Filtering.
Enter one URL domain per line and ‘.’ to finish.
cisco.com
ironport.com/*
*.example.com
10.2.4.5/24
[2001:DB8::1]
URL list sample added.
There are currently 4 URL list configured.
Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new URL whitelist.
- EDIT - Modify an existing URL whitelist.
- DELETE - Delete an existing URL whitelist.
[>]EDIT
Choose the operation to edit the URL whitelist:
- IMPORT - Import a file into an existing URL whitelist
- EXPORT - Export an existing URL whitelist into a file
- RENAME - Rename an existing URL whitelist
[>]IMPORT
Assign new name to the imported list? (By default, name stored in the file will be applied to the list)
[N] > Y
Enter name of the list > new_list
Enter filename to import from > URLfile
NOTE: These files will be stored in /pub/configuration
URL list "new_list" added.

webcacheflush

Flush the cache used by URL filtering features. Use this command if you change the certificate that is used for communication with Cisco Web Security Services. Generally, you will use this command only at the direction of Cisco support.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

> webcacheflush
Web Security cache has been flushed.

websecurityadvancedconfig

Configure advanced settings for URL filtering.
Note

Except to change timeout values for troubleshooting purposes, use this command only under the direction of Cisco support.

The timeout value is the value, in seconds, for communication with the cloud services that provide reputation and category for URLs.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.

Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.

Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format

> websecurityadvancedconfig timeout=10

Example

> websecurityadvancedconfig

Enter URL lookup timeout (includes any DNS lookup time) in seconds:
[15]>

Enter the URL cache size (no. of URLs):
[1215000]>

Do you want to disable DNS lookups? [N]>

Enter the maximum number of URLs that should be scanned:
[100]>

Enter the Web security service hostname:
[example.com]>

Enter the threshold value for outstanding requests:
[20]>

Do you want to verify server certificate? [Y]>

Enter the default time-to-live value (seconds):
[30]>

Do you want to include additional headers? [N]>

Enter the default debug log level for RPC server:
[Info]>

Enter the default debug log level for SDS cache:
[Info]>

Enter the default debug log level for HTTP client:
[Info]>
**websecurityconfig**

Configure basic settings for URL filtering (URL reputation and URL category features.)

Normally, certificate management is automatic. Unless directed to do otherwise by Cisco TAC, you should select No at the prompt to set a certificate.

**Usage**

*Commit:* This command requires a ‘commit’.

*Cluster Management:* This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

*Batch Command:* This command supports a batch format.

**Batch Format**

- Enable URL filtering features
  > websecurityconfig urlscanning enable

- Disable URL filtering features
  > websecurityconfig urlscanning disable

- Set the client certificate for communication with cloud services. Use this command only under the guidance of Cisco TAC.
  > websecurityconfig urlscanning certificate sds_cert

**Example**

> websecurityconfig

URL Filtering is currently disabled.
Enable URL Filtering?
[N]>Y

Do you want to set client certificate for Cisco Web Security Services Authentication?
[Y]>Y

Choose the certificate
1.SDS client cert
2.mail cert
[1]>1

Do you want to add URL whitelist? [N]>Y
Choose from URL list to whitelist
  - 1. urllist1
  - 2. urllist2
[1]>1

URL Filtering: Enabled
websecuritydiagnostics

View diagnostic statistics related to URL filtering.

Usage

Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

> websecuritydiagnostics
Cache Size: 254
Cache Hits: 551
Response Time
Minimum: None
Average: 0.0
Maximum: None
DNS Lookup Time
Minimum: 9.4198775
Average: 10.1786801765
Maximum: 10.544356

User Management

This section contains the following CLI commands:
- userconfig
- password or passwd
- last
- who
- whoami

userconfig

Description

Manage user accounts and connections to external authentication sources.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to cluster mode.
Batch Command: This command does not support a batch format.

Example - Creating a New User Account

The following example shows how to create a new user account with a Help Desk User role.

Table 3-179  userconfig - Creating new user account

```
mail3.example.com> userconfig

Users:
1. admin - "Administrator" (admin)

External authentication: Disabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:
- NEW - Create a new account.
- EDIT - Modify an account.
- DELETE - Remove an account.
- PASSWORD - Change the password for a user.
- EXTERNAL - Configure external authentication.

[]> new

Enter the new username.

[]> helpdesk1

Enter the full name for helpdesk1.

[]> Help Desk

Assign a role to "helpdesk1":
```
User Management

Table 3-179  
**userconfig - Creating new user account**

1. Administrators - Administrators have full access to all settings of the system.

2. Operators - Operators are restricted from creating new user accounts.

3. Read-Only Operators - Read-Only operators may only view settings and status information.

4. Guests - Guest users may only view status information.

5. Help Desk Users - Help Desk users have access only to ISQ and Message Tracking.

[1]> 5

Enter the password for helpdesk1.

> 

Please enter the new password again.

>

Users:

1. admin - "Administrator" (admin)

2. helpdesk1 - "Help Desk" (helpdesk)

External authentication: Disabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new account.
- EDIT - Modify an account.
- DELETE - Remove an account.
- PASSWORD - Change the password for a user.
- EXTERNAL - Configure external authentication.

[]>
Example - Setting Up a RADIUS Server for External Authentication

The following example shows how to set up a RADIUS server for external authentication. To set up a RADIUS server, enter the hostname, port, shared password, and whether to use CHAP or PAP for the authentication protocol.

| Table 3-180 | userconfig - Setting up a RADIUS server |

mail3.example.com> userconfig

Users:

1. admin - "Administrator" (admin)

External authentication: Disabled

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Create a new account.
- EDIT - Modify an account.
- DELETE - Remove an account.
- PASSWORD - Change the password for a user.
- EXTERNAL - Configure external authentication.

[>] external

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- SETUP - Set up global settings.

[>] setup

Do you want to enable external authentication? [N]> y

Please enter the timeout in seconds for how long the external authentication credentials will be cached. (Enter '0' to disable expiration of authentication credentials altogether when using one time passwords.)
Choose a mechanism to use:

LDAP is unavailable because no LDAP queries of type EXTERNALAUTH are configured

1. RADIUS

Configured RADIUS servers:

- No RADIUS servers configured

Choose the operation you want to perform:

- NEW - Add a RADIUS server configuration.

new

Please enter host name or IP address of the RADIUS server:

radius.example.com

Please enter port number of the RADIUS server:

1812

Please enter the shared password:

Please enter the new password again:

Please enter timeout in seconds for receiving a valid reply from the server:

5
password or passwd

Description

Change your password.

Usage

Commit: This command requires a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to cluster mode.
The `passwd` command is a special case because it needs to be usable by guest users who can only ever be in machine mode. If a guest user issues the `passwd` command on a machine in a cluster, it will not print the warning message but will instead just silently operate on the cluster level data without changing the user’s mode. All other users will get the above written behavior (consistent with the other restricted configuration commands).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

### Example

**Table 3-181**

password

mail3.example.com> password

Old password: your_old_password

New password: your_new_password

Retype new password: your_new_password

Password changed.

### last

**Description**

The `last` command displays who has recently logged into the system. By default, it shows all users who have logged into the system.

**Usage**

- **Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.
- **Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode.
- **Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.
### Example

#### Table 3-182  

elroy.run> last

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Username</th>
<th>Remote Host</th>
<th>Login Time</th>
<th>Logout Time</th>
<th>Total Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>admin</td>
<td>10.251.23.186</td>
<td>Thu Sep 01 09:14</td>
<td>still logged in</td>
<td>1h 5m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admin</td>
<td>10.251.23.186</td>
<td>Wed Aug 31 14:00</td>
<td>Wed Aug 31 14:01</td>
<td>1m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admin</td>
<td>10.251.23.142</td>
<td>Wed Aug 31 11:26</td>
<td>Wed Aug 31 11:38</td>
<td>11m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admin</td>
<td>10.251.23.142</td>
<td>Wed Aug 31 11:05</td>
<td>Wed Aug 31 11:09</td>
<td>4m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admin</td>
<td>10.251.23.142</td>
<td>Wed Aug 31 10:52</td>
<td>Wed Aug 31 10:53</td>
<td>1m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admin</td>
<td>10.251.60.37</td>
<td>Tue Aug 30 01:45</td>
<td>Tue Aug 30 02:17</td>
<td>32m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admin</td>
<td>10.251.16.231</td>
<td>Mon Aug 29 10:29</td>
<td>Mon Aug 29 10:41</td>
<td>11m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown</td>
<td></td>
<td>Thu Aug 25 22:20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### who

### Description

The `who` command lists all users who are logged into the system via the CLI, the time of login, the idle time, and the remote host from which the user is logged in.

### Usage

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto). This command requires access to the local file system.

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.
Example

Table 3-183 who

mail3.example.com> who

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Username</th>
<th>Login Time</th>
<th>Idle Time</th>
<th>Remote Host</th>
<th>What</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>admin</td>
<td>03:27PM</td>
<td>0s</td>
<td>10.1.3.201</td>
<td>cli</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

whoami

Description

The whoami command displays the username and full name of the user currently logged in, and which groups the user belongs to.

Usage

**Commit**: This command requires a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management**: This command can be used in all three machine modes (cluster, group, machine).

**Batch Command**: This command does not support a batch format.

Example

Table 3-184 whoami

mail3.example.com> whoami

Username: admin

Full Name: Administrator

Groups: admin, operators, config, log, guest

Virtual Appliance Management

- loadlicense
- showlicense
**loadlicense**

**Description**


This command is available to users with Admin or Operator privileges.

**Usage**

**Commit:** This command does not require a ‘commit’.

**Cluster Management:** This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto).

**Batch Command:** This command does not support a batch format.

**Example**

```plaintext
> loadlicense

1 Paste via CLI
2 Load from file
How would you like to load a license file?
[1]> 2

Enter the name of the file in /configurations to import:
[]> <filename>

TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF USE
<Terms and conditions>

Do you accept the above license agreement?
[1]> y
The license agreement was accepted.

The following feature key have been added:
<feature keys>

Errors and hardware misconfigurations may also be shown.
```
showlicense

Description
Displays information about the current virtual appliance license. Additional details are available using the featurekey command.
This command is available to users with Admin or Operator privileges.

Usage
Commit: This command does not require a ‘commit’.
Cluster Management: This command is restricted to machine mode. It is further restricted to the login host (i.e., the specific machine you are logged onto).
Batch Command: This command supports a batch format.

Batch Format
The syntax of this command is: showlicense

Example
> showlicense

cOMPANY: Example Inc.
org: Widget Division
unit: Portland Data Center
seats: 1000
city: Portland
state: Oregon
country: US
eemail: mailadmin@example.com
begin_date: Tue Dec 6 17:45:19 2011
end_date: Mon Sep 1 17:45:19 2014
vln: ABC-123423123
serial: 1003385